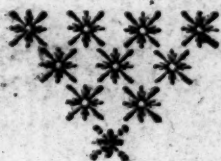


THE
ENGLISH GUIDE
TO THE
FRENCH TONGUE;

1212.9.1
4

SHEWING
The GRAMMATICAL CONSTRUCTION of
ENGLISH Words into FRENCH:

WITH A SET OF
RULES AND EXERCISES.
FOR
THE USE OF YOUNG PEOPLE.
By GEORGE PICARD.



LONDON:

Printed for S. CROWDER, No. 12, Pater-noster-Row,

1778.

[Price Two Shillings.]

30100 11113

11100 11113

11100 11113

11100 11113

11100 11113

11100 11113

11100 11113

P R E F A C E.

THE learning a language by grammar is so disagreeable to the generality of young people, that great care should be taken to render this method of acquiring it as plain and easy as possible: for as youth are naturally thoughtless, they soon take a dislike to whatever requires any considerable degree of attention; and hence it is, that they often leave off their study of languages, almost as soon as they have begun.

There are certain phrases in all languages, that may be literally translated into any other, without hurting either the clearness of the sense or the elegance of the expression. But there are other phrases, which cannot be so translated without producing one or other of these bad effects, or both. These last are called the idioms of a language; and it is in understanding and translating these that the chief difficulty of a language consists. To remove this difficulty, has been my principal view in the following performance. For having examined with attention what it is that puzzles scholars when they begin to make French exercises, I found it to be this: they want to know the proper method of turning English words into French, and they cannot find it out by the rules laid down to them in the generality of grammars. This led me to
think

think, that if the rules pointed out to them, the grammatical construction of the English words into French, they would meet with much less difficulty, than they now do, in making their exercises. My meaning will be made more plain by an example.

Suppose a scholar has the following sentences to render into French : *I know what makes him angry. He does what he likes. What prompted Caesar to make war against his country? What is a spirit? What says your brother? We know in what country he is. He asked him what his horses and bounds stood him in a year. What is the cause of winds? If you ask him what he did it for.*

As the pronoun *what* may be turned into French in no less than eight different ways : viz. by *cequi*, *ceque*, *qu'est-cequi*, *qu'est-ceque*, *que*, *quel*, *or* *quelle*, *quoi*, *combien* ; how puzzled will the scholar be, to find out which is the right one for every sentence ! He will be obliged to read many pages of his grammar, and after all perhaps not find what he is looking for. But how easily will he find it, if the rule tells him,—that *what* is rendered into French in the following manner ;

First, when a question is not asked, it is made by *cequi*, if it stands immediately before a verb, without a noun or pronoun between ; and by *ceque*, if there is one.

2dly. By *qu'est-cequi*, when a question is asked, if it comes immediately before a verb (except the verb *to be*) without a nominative between

or

B O O K S, Lately Published
Printed for S. CROWDER, Number
Pater-noster-Row.

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS,

AN English Exercise-Book to translate into French; comprising all the rules of the French Grammar, and other necessary Observations, ascending gradually from the meanest to higher capacities. With a Collection of forty diverting Tales, fifty Letters on different subjects, twelve Dialogues, and a general Index. By J. DAUBICHON, Professor of the French Tongue in Dublin. The Fourth Edition with large Additions. Price 1s. 6d.

Phædri Fabularum Libri Quinque; or, the Fables of Phædrus, &c. Improved by a method entirely new. Wherein the order of construction is so natural and concise, that the most ignorant Scholar may easily find it without the least hesitation. To which are added, Accents and Notes for the true pronounciation and right interpretation of all the Idioms, Phrases, proverbial Expressions and Grammatical Figures which frequently occur in this Author. By which assistance the young Beginner, though not perfectly acquainted with the rules of Grammar, is enabled of himself to learn his Lessons with ease and pleasure, and without interruption to the Master. By JOHN ENTICK, M. A. Editor and Improver of Schrevelius's Lexicon. The Third Edition with Improvements. Price 1s. 6d.

A View of the Earth: being a short, but comprehensive System of Modern Geography: exhibiting, 1. A Description of the Figure, Size, Motion, &c. of the Earth; with the Uses and Height of the Atmosphere, or Air surrounding it. 2. Such Geographical Definitions, Schemes, and Descriptions, as form a necessary Introduction to this Branch of Learning. 3. The Situation and Extent of the several Kingdoms, and Nations in each Quarter; their chief Cities; with the Distance, Direction, and Difference of Time from London. 4. An Account of the several Islands, Trade, Commodities, Religions, Number of Inhabitants, principal Mountains, and Rivers in the World; also some Observations on the less known Parts, the Trade Winds, and Monsoons. 5. The Explanation and Use of a new Set of Maps, annexed.

BOOKS Printed for S. CROWDER.

ed to the several Quarters, drawn according to the most approved modern Projections, and regulated by Observations. 6. A Description of Commodore Anson's Voyage round the World; shewing the several Islands and Countries he touched at; and the Places where he took any Prize, particularly the rich Manilla Ship. 7. A new and curious Geographical Clock, which points out the Difference of Time, with the Hour, in the different Nations upon Earth, at one View. To which is added, A Description of the Terrestrial Globe: with its Application to a great Variety of useful Problems. Concluding with some curious Phenomena exhibited upon the Globe in a darkened Room; and a few select Paradoxes, intended to excite the Attention of the Learner. The Whole laid down in a Manner so easy and natural, as to be understood in a few Days. Addressed to the young Gentlemen and Ladies of Great Britain and Ireland. By the Reverend Mr. TURNER, Late of Magdalen-Hall, Oxford; now Rector of Comberton, Vicar of Elmley, Minister of Stoulton, and Chaplain to the Right Honorable the Countess Dowager of Wigton; Author of a View of the Heavens, or an Introduction to Modern Astronomy; Plain Trigonometry rendered easy and familiar, by Calculations in Arithmetic only; and the Heavens Surveyed, and the true System of the Universe Delineated, The Third Edition, with Large and Useful Additions, particularly an Account of the British Empire. Price 3s. 6d.

A View of the Heavens, being an easy Introduction to Modern Astronomy: exhibiting the Number, Order, Distances and Periods of all the Planets and their Moons composing our System; with the Length of the Year, Day, and Variety of Seasons to the Inhabitants of each Planet. Adorned with Copper-Plates of the System: Course of a Solar Spot over the Sun's Disk, a Map of the Moon, &c. and a curious Astronomical Clock, which shews the Hour of the Night by the Stars. Addressed to the Ladies and Gentlemen of Great Britain and Ireland. By the Reverend Mr. TURNER, Author of the View of the Earth, a short but comprehensive System of Modern Geography. The Heavens Surveyed, and the true System of the Universe Delineated. Trigonometry rendered easy and familiar by Calculations in Arithmetic only. A New Introduction to Book-Keeping, &c. A New Edition with Large Additions and Improvements. Price 3s. 6d.

The Heavens Surveyed, and the true System of the Universe delineated, so as to form a Curious Astronomical Instrument: exhibiting the Number, Order, Periods, Aphelions, Perihelions, Nodes, &c. of all the Primary Planets by Inspection: together with an Easy and Expeditious Method of Ascertaining by the same Instrument, and a new Set of Tables, their Anomalies, Longitudes, Latitudes, Retrogradations, Conjunctions, Elongations, and Distances at all Times, both Heliocentric and Geocentric; that is, as seen from the Sun and from the Earth; and also from one another. In the Course of the Work is met with, a View of the System from the Earth, Elucidating and Explaining the true Causes of the Directions and Retrogradations of the Planets; and of the various Phases they exhibit to us here: with the Reasons of the Transits of Venus and Mercury, over the Sun;—the Times when they happen; and an easy Method of delineating the Tracks those Planets take in passing over his Disk.—Also, the remarkable Path which the Planet Mars seemed to describe in the Heavens in the Year 1762. The whole adapted to the New Style; and constructed in a manner so Easy and Natural, as to convey to the Astronomical Learner a perfect Knowledge of the Solar System at first View. Addressed to the Youth of Great Britain and Ireland.

By the Reverend Mr. TURNER, Author of a View of the Heavens, or an easy Introduction to Modern Astronomy. A View of the Earth, or a short System of Modern Geography, Trigonometry rendered easy and familiar by Calculations in Arithmetic only. A New Introduction to Book-keeping after the Italian Method. Price 3s. 6d.

Plain Trigonometry rendered easy and familiar, by Calculations in Arithmetic only: with its Application and Use in ascertaining all Kinds of Heights, Depths, and Distances in the Heavens, as well as upon the Earth and Seas, whether of Towers, Forts, Trees, Wells, Ships, Hills, Clouds, Atmosphere, Sun, Moon, Mountains in the Moon, &c. In which is also shewn, a curious Trigonometrical Method of discovering the Places where Bees hive in large Woods, in order to obtain, more readily, the salutary Produce of those little Insects. By the Reverend Mr. TURNER, Author of a View of the Heavens, or an easy Introduction to Modern Astronomy.—The Heavens Surveyed and the true System of the Universe Delineated. A View of the Earth,

B O O K S Printed for S. CROWDER.

or a short System of Modern Geography—A New Introduction to Book-keeping, &c. &c. A New Edition with large Additions and Improvements, with many Cuts, Illustrating this Subject. Price 3s. 6d.

A New Introduction to Book-keeping, after the Italian Method, by Debtor and Creditor: in which the Theory of that Art is not only elucidated and clearly explained, but the Practice made easy and familiar, by the Addition of a Set of Books, exhibiting the various Incidents which usually occur in the course of Business. The whole laid down in a Manner so easy and intelligible as to be understood in a few Days. By the Reverend Mr. TURNER, Author of a View of the Earth, or a short System of Modern Geography.—Plain Trigonometry rendered easy and familiar, by Calculations in Arithmetic only. A View of the Heavens, or an easy Introduction to Modern Astronomy. The Heavens Surveyed, and the true System of the Universe Delineated, A New Edition, Price only 1s.

A New and Easy Guide to the Use of the Globes, and the Rudiments of Geography: wherein the Knowledge of the Heavens and Earth is made easy to the meanest Capacity. 1. By giving a short and concise Account of the four Quarters of the World, with the Distance and Situation of the principal Islands and Inland Places, and by the Solution of seventy useful Problems in Geography, Astronomy, Navigation, &c. Written in familiar Dialogues, in order to render it more easy, pleasant, and diverting, to the Learners; with some Observations on Mr. Neal's Patent Globe. To which are annexed, Three useful Tables: 1. Shewing the Latitude and Longitude of the principal Places from the Meridian of London. 2. Shewing the Sun's Place, Declination, Time of Rising and Setting; Length of Day and Night; and beginning and ending of Twilight every Week, according to the New Style. 3. Shewing the Latitude, Longitude, right Ascension and Declination of the most eminent fixed Stars. By DANIEL FENNING, Author of the Young Algebraist's Companion, and the British Youth's Instructor, Universal Spelling Book. A New Edition with a set of Maps, and other Cuts neatly Engraved. Price 3s.

A New Grammar of the English Language; or, an easy Introduction to the Art of Speaking and Writing English with Propriety and Correctness: By D. FENNING, Author of the Royal English Dictionary. Third Edition Improved. Price 1s. 6d.

P R E F A C E.

or after; and by *que*, or *qu'est-ceque*, if there is one;
 3dly. By *quel*, before a substantive noun singular, of the masculine gender; by *quelle*, if the noun is feminine; and by *quels*, *quelles*, if the noun is plural, &c.

The scholar then will have nothing to do, but to look under what particular case *what* falls, and he will immediately see the right method of turning it into French.

Thus it is obvious, that the easiest and shortest way of teaching a language is, to shew the pupil how the words of his mother tongue are construed in the language he is learning; and that is the method I have all along followed.

This work was greatly approved of by a late Earl, celebrated for his wit and taste. His Lordship's opinion was, that our present grammars are better calculated to perfect scholars, who have already made considerable progress in French, than to initiate them in that language.

I have taken care to lay down the rules in as plain and easy terms as possible, for it is of the greatest consequence, that the scholar should understand them, as soon as he reads them. For this purpose, each exercise runs upon one rule only, when it happens to be long. Then there is a general exercise which runs promiscuously upon all the rules the scholar has learned. This is done by way of recapitulation, in order to fix the rules more deeply in his memory, and to make him more ready at using of them.

As this work is upon a plan never attempted before (that I know of) it is not to be expected, it should be brought to that degree of perfection

tion, to which it might be carried. I have only to say, that, after a trial of fourteen years, I found it to answer the purpose for which it was designed.

I have put no French to the English words, as is done in our common books of exercises; because by that means scholars contract a habit of never using their dictionary, which always proves very detrimental to them. But, if they are obliged (as they here are to look in their dictionary, they will insensibly get a great stock of words, which they could not learn otherwise without much trouble and at vast expence of time; and this, besides, will exercise their judgment by accustoming them to distinguish the different significations of words, and to pitch upon that one which best suits the meaning of the sentence.

I well know, that, according to the common method of proceeding, it is not every scholar, who learns French, that is allowed a dictionary. This is not owing to any want of judgment in the teachers, but to an ill-timed parsimony in the parents, who are unwilling to put themselves to so much expence. To such parents I have only to say, that, if they wish their children to become good French scholars, instead of mere smatterers, they must not begrudge this necessary expence; and that, if they do, they may very properly be said (if I may use a vulgar but significant expression) to be *penny-wise* and *pound-foolish*; as every shilling they lay out upon this branch of their education, without giving them a dictionary,

is absolutely thrown away : for I never yet knew an instance of any one's becoming a good French scholar without the help of a dictionary. These parents seem rather to gratify their own vanity, than to consult their childrens interest. They wish to have it to say, that their children are learning French ; but, by denying them the means of acquiring it, they appear to me to be perfectly indifferent whether they learn it or not.

The judicious reader will easily see, that this work is intended to answer the purpose both of a grammar and a book of exercises. But it will not supply the place, or supersede the necessity of a spelling-book ; for, before the scholar is put into it, he is supposed to be able to read French with tolerable accuracy : and when he can do so, he must be made perfect master of the parts of speech ; of which the generality of children are ignorant ; and it is chiefly their ignorance in this respect, that hinders them ever after from understanding the rules. When the scholar is advanced so far, he must learn the conjugation of verbs and the declension of nouns ; and as soon as he is master of these, he may be put upon turning into French the exercises upon the verb *to be*, and upon the substantive nouns, page 46. He will then be qualified to enter upon the rules relating to the article, and may afterwards proceed to learn the other rules exactly in the order in which they lie.

ERRATA.

- Page 5 line 22, read *meilleur*, instead of *meillieur*.
- 38 l. 3, read *nous puissions*, instead of *nous puissions*.
- 43 l. 34, read *mis*, instead of *mi*.
- 45 l. 4, read *qu'ils con-vainquent*, instead of *qu'ils ent*.
- 48 l. 1, read *nominative* for the *enminative*.
- 52 l. 18, read *la mieux policée*, instead of *la plus pol-
licée*.
- 57 l. 29, read *le créateur*, instead of *la créateur*.
- 64 l. 22, read, if there is any tense of the verb, *to be*,
or of any other verb between the last noun
and the adjective.
- 65 l. 4, read, are not accompanied with the verb *to be*,
instead of, are accompanied with the verb
to be
- 65 l. 6, read, but if they are accompanied with that
verb; instead of, but if they are not accom-
panied.
- 77 Rule 10, read *elles fem. and eux mas.*
- 105 l. 7, read, *ceux qui croient*.
- 121 l. 8, read *si vous rencontrez*, *ibid. l. 10, read dites
à qui que ce soit*.
- 177 l. 38, read the spirit of party that reigned
- 189 l. 15, read *donner*, instead of *denner*. *ibid. l. 30,
read suivant que*, instead of *suivan que*.
- 190 l. 10, read *presence* instead of *presense*, *ibid. l.
12, read jusqu'*; *quant*, instead of *jusqu'à
quant à*
- 192 l. 1, read *medecine*, instead of *medicine*, *ibid. 2,
read chercher*, instead of *chercer*.

T H E
ENGLISH GUIDE
T O T H E
FRENCH TONGUE.

C H A P. I.

Q. **H**OW many letters are there in *French*?

A. Twenty-five, viz. a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

Q. How are these letters divided?

A. Into vowels and consonants.

Q. How many vowels are there?

A. Six, a, e, i, o, u, y: the other letters are called consonants.

Q. What do you mean by parts of speech?

A. The words we make use of to express ourselves in writing or speaking.

Q. How many parts of speech are there?

A. Nine, viz. the article, substantive (or noun), adjective, pronoun, verb, adverb, preposition, conjunction, and interjection.

Q. What is an article?

A. It is a word prefixed to a substantive, denoting its different states or relations, as *the man, the woman, the king.*

Q. What is a substantive?

A. A substantive is a word expressing the name of a thing, that can be seen or conceived, as *the house*, *virtue*, *vice*.

Q. What is an adjective?

A. A word that shews what the substantive is, as *a good man*, *white roses*. *Good* and *white* denote what the man and the roses are.

Q. What is a pronoun?

A. A pronoun is a word that stands for the name of a person, or a substantive, as, *I dance*. *It is old*.—*I* stands for my name; and *it* for the thing spoke of.

Q. What is a verb?

A. A verb is a word that expresses what is said, or affirmed, of things, as *he writes*, *we speak*.

Q. What do you mean by adverbs, conjunctions, prepositions, and interjections?

A. Adverbs express some circumstance, quality, or manner of the verb they are joined with.—Conjunctions connect sentences together.—Prepositions are placed before nouns to shew their relation.—Interjections express a sudden emotion or passion of the soul.—Adverbs, conjunctions, prepositions, and interjections, are all indeclinable; that is to say, they admit of no article before them. One cannot say, *the never*, *the before*.

C H A P. II.

Q. **W**HAT is to be observed of substantives?

A. That they have two numbers; the singular, and the plural: and each number has four cases, *viz.* the nominative, the genitive, the dative, and the accusative.

Q. What do you mean by singular and plural?

A. The singular expresses but one thing, and the plural two or more; as, *the man*, *the boys*.

Q. How

Q. How is the plural formed in English?

A. By adding an *s* to the singular, as *bird*, *birds*. There are some exceptions to this rule; such as, *child*, *wolf*, *calf*, which make *children*, *wolves*, *calves*.

Q. By what mark do you know the cases of nouns?

A. By the article that stands before them.

Q. Which are these articles?

A. The following; *the*, for the nominative and accusative: *of the*, or *of*, for the genitive: *to the*, or *to*, for the dative; as,

Singular.

Plural.

Nom. the King,

the Kings.

Gen. of the King,

of the Kings.

Dat. to the King,

to the Kings.

There is also another article, *viz.* *a*, or *an*, as follows; nom. *a*, or *an*, gen. *of a*, *of an*, dat. *to a*, *to an*.

Q. Which are the articles in French?

A. If the substantive is singular, masculine, and begins with a consonant, they are as follows:

Nom. *le*,

Gen. *du*,

Dat. *au*,

Acc. *le*,

as

le Roi,

du Roi,

au Roi,

le Roi,

the King.

of the King.

to the King.

the King.

But, if the noun is feminine, the articles are, *la*, *de la*, *à la*, *la*; as,

Nom. *la Reine*,

Gen. *de la Reine*,

Dat. *à la Reine*,

Acc. *la Reine*,

the Queen.

of the Queen.

to the Queen.

the Queen.

If the noun is singular, and begins with a vowel, or an *b* mute, it takes the following articles, *l'*, *del'*, *al'*, as for example:

Nom. *l'ame*,

Gen. *de l'ame*,

Dat. *à l'ame*,

Acc. *l'ame*,

the Soul.

of the Soul.

to the Soul.

the Soul.

Q. Which articles do French nouns take in the plural?

A. All nouns plural, whether masculine, feminine,

or beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute, take the following articles, *les, des, aux*; as,

Plural.

Plural.

Nom. *les Hommes*, the Men. *les Femmes*, Women.

Gen. *des Hommes*, of the Men. *des Femmes*, of Women.

Dat. *aux Hommes*, to the Men. *aux Femmes*, to Women.

les Oiseaux, the Birds.

des Oiseaux, of the Birds.

aux Oiseaux, to the Birds.

Q. Have the *French* no other article?

A. Yes, they have *un* for the masculine, and *une* for the feminine; as,

Singular.

Singular.

N. *un cheval*, a horse. *une maison*, a house.

G. *d'un cheval*, of a horse. *d'une maison*, of a house.

D. *à un cheval*, to a horse. *à une maison*, to a house.

Proper names of persons, cities, villages, and places, take no article before the nominative, but they take *de* before the genitive, and *à* before the dative; as,

London, *Londres*. God, *Dieu*.

Of London, *de Londres*. Of God, *de Dieu*.

To London, *à Londres*. To God, *à Dieu*.

Q. How is the plural made in *French*?

A. By adding an *s* to the singular, as *la maison, les maisons*. But if the singular ends in *ail* or *al*, the plural ends in *aux*, as *general, généraux, travail, travaux*, except *bal, carnaval, regal, portail, serail, attirail, detail, eventail, mail, epouvantail, gouvernail*, which take an *s* in the plural. If the singular ends in *u*, the plural takes *x* instead of *s*.

C H A P. III.

Q. **W**HAT is to be observed of *English* adjectives?

A. That they are of all genders and numbers; as, *a good man, a good woman; the good men, the good women.*

Q. Pray,

Q. Pray, is it the same with *French* adjectives?

A. No; *French* adjectives have a singular and a plural, a masculine and a feminine; except those ending in *e* mute, which have the masculine and feminine alike; as, *un homme sage, une femme sage.*

Q. How do they form their plural?

A. By adding an *s* to their singular, unless they end in *x*, and then the singular and plural are alike in the masculine: but the feminine takes an *s*.

Q. How do *French* adjectives form their feminine?

A. We have observed, that those ending in *e* mute have their masculine and feminine alike. But the others generally form their feminine by adding *e* to the masculine; as, *grand, joli, amer, prudent, make, grande, jolie, amere, prudente.*

Q. Do they all follow this rule?

A. No; some form their feminine according to the ending of the masculine; as follows: Such as end in *eur, eux*, change *r, x*, into *se*; as, *malheureux; f, malheureuse: flatteur; f, flatteuse*: Except the following; which add an *e* mute to form their feminine; as, *antérieur, extérieur, citerieur, inférieur, intérieur, meilleur, majeur, mineur, postérieur, supérieur, ultérieur.*—The following form their feminine, as follows.

Mas.	Fem.	Mas.	Fem.
<i>Beau,</i>	<i>Belle.</i>	<i>Vieux,</i>	<i>Vicille.</i>
<i>Nouveau,</i>	<i>Nouvelle.</i>	<i>Crud,</i>	<i>Crue.</i>
<i>Absou,</i>	<i>Absoute.</i>	<i>Nud,</i>	<i>Nue.</i>
<i>Benin,</i>	<i>Benigne.</i>	<i>Verd,</i>	<i>Kerte.</i>
<i>Malin,</i>	<i>Maligne.</i>	<i>Mou,</i>	<i>Molle.</i>
<i>Frais,</i>	<i>Fraiche.</i>	<i>Public,</i>	<i>Publique.</i>
<i>Jaloux,</i>	<i>Jalouse.</i>	<i>Grec,</i>	<i>Grecque.</i>
<i>Roux,</i>	<i>Rousse.</i>	<i>Turc,</i>	<i>Turque.</i>
<i>Diffus,</i>	<i>Diffoute.</i>	<i>Caduc,</i>	<i>Caducque.</i>

Those ending in *f*, change *f* into *ve*, as *vif, vive.*

Those ending thus form their feminine as follows:

	Mas.	Fem.
<i>c,</i>	<i>Sec,</i>	<i>Sèche.</i>
<i>g,</i>	<i>Long,</i>	<i>Longue.</i>

<i>el,</i>	adds,	<i>le,</i>	as,	<i>Cruel,</i>	<i>Cruelle.</i>
<i>il,</i>		<i>le,</i>		<i>Pareil,</i>	<i>Pareille.</i>
<i>el,</i>		<i>le,</i>		<i>Mol,</i>	<i>Molle.</i>
<i>ul,</i>		<i>le,</i>		<i>Nul,</i>	<i>Nulle.</i>
<i>on,</i>		<i>ne,</i>		<i>Bon,</i>	<i>Bonne.</i>
<i>en,</i>		<i>ne,</i>		<i>Ancien,</i>	<i>Ancienne.</i>
<i>as, os, es,</i>	add,	<i>se,</i>		<i>Gras,</i>	<i>Grasse.</i>
<i>et, ot,</i>		<i>te,</i>		<i>Net,</i>	<i>Nette.</i>

Those ending in *oux, aux*, turn the *x*; the first into *ce*, as *doux, douce*; the second into *ffe*; as, *faux, fausse*.

It is to be observed, that the *Frenchuse*, *bel, vieil*, before a vowel, or an *h* not sounded; as, *un bel homme, un bel oiseau*; a handsome man, a fine bird: *un vieil officier*, an old officer.

Q. What is meant by degrees of comparison?

A. The increasing or lessening the signification of adjectives.

Q. How many degrees of comparison are there?

A. Three; viz. the positive, the comparative, and the superlative; as, *great, greater, greatest*.

Q. How are the comparative and superlative formed in *English*?

A. The comparative is formed by adding *er* to the positive, and the superlative by adding *est*, if the adjective ends with a consonant; as, *tall, taller, tallest*: but, if it ends with a vowel, the comparative only adds an *r*, and the superlative *st*; as, *wise, wiser, wisest*.

Q. Do all adjectives make their comparatives, and superlatives, after this manner?

A. No; those of two, or more, syllables form them with these adverbs, *more, most*; as, *courageous, more courageous, most courageous*.

C H A P. IV.

Q. **H**OW many sorts of pronouns are there?

A. Four; viz. personal, possessive, relative, and demonstrative.

Q. What

Q. What is the use of pronouns personal ?

A. They stand for the name of rational, or irrational creatures, and of things.

Q. How many of them are there ?

A. Six ; three for the singular, and three for the plural.

Sing. *I, thou, he, she, or it.* Plu. *We, ye, they.*

They are declined thus :

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. <i>I,</i>	<i>we.</i>	Nom. <i>thou,</i>	<i>ye, or you.</i>
Gen. <i>of me,</i>	<i>of us.</i>	Gen. <i>of thee, of you.</i>	
Dat. <i>to me,</i>	<i>to us.</i>	Dat. <i>to thee, to you.</i>	
Acc. <i>me,</i>	<i>us.</i>	Acc. <i>thee, you.</i>	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	
Nom. <i>he,</i>	<i>they.</i>	Nom. <i>she.</i>	
Gen. <i>of him,</i>	<i>of them.</i>	Gen. <i>of her.</i>	
Dat. <i>to him,</i>	<i>to them.</i>	Dat. <i>to her.</i>	
Acc. <i>him,</i>	<i>them.</i>	Acc. <i>her.</i>	

When we speak of inanimate things in the singular, we use *it* ; as, *the house is large, but it is old.*

Q. How are pronouns personal declined in *French* ?

A. As follows :

Singular.
 Nom. *je, moi, I.*
 Gen. *de moi,*
 Dat. *me, moi, à moi,*
 Acc. *me, moi,*

Plural.
nous, we.
de nous,
nous, à nous,
nous.

Singular.
 Nom. *tu, toi, thou.*
 Gen. *de toi,*
 Dat. *te, toi, à toi,*
 Acc. *te, toi,*

Plural.
vous, ye.
de vous,
vous, à vous,
vous.

Singular.
 Nom. *il, lui, he or it.*
 Gen. *de lui,*
 Dat. *lui, à lui,*
 Acc. *le, lui,*

Plural.
ils, eux, they.
d'eux,
leur, à eux,
les, eux,

Singular,

Singular.
 Nom. *elle*, she or it.
 Gen. *d'elle*,
 Dat. *lui*, à *elle*,
 Acc. *la*, *elle*,

Plural.
elles, they..
d'elles,
leur, à *elles*,
les, *elles*,

Singular.
 Nom. *soi*, one's self.
 Gen. *de soi*,
 Dat. *soi*, *se*,

Q. Which are the pronouns possessive?

A. *My, thy, his, her, its, mine, thine, our, your, their, ours, yours, theirs.*

Q. Which are the pronouns relative?

A. *Who, which, that, what.* They are called relative, because they relate to nouns or persons.

They are declined as follows :

Singular and Plural.

Nom. <i>who</i> ,	<i>which</i> ,	<i>that</i> .
Gen. <i>whose, of whom</i> ,	<i>of which, whose</i> .	<i>of that</i> ..
Dat. <i>to whom</i> ,	<i>to which</i> ,	<i>to that</i> .
Acc. <i>whom</i> ,	<i>which</i> ,	<i>that</i> .

Q. Which are the pronouns demonstrative?

A. The following ; *this, that*, singular ; *these, those*, plural :—they are used when we particularize or point at persons or things ; as, *that door, this horse*.

Q. How are verbs divided?

A. Into regular, irregular, and impersonal.

A verb is called regular, when it follows the rules of its conjugation in forming its tenses. It is called irregular when it deviates from them. An impersonal is a verb which is conjugated only in the third person of the singular ; as, *it rains, it snows*.

Q. What is meant by verbs reflected?

A. Verbs denoting an action, which reflects on the person or thing that produces it ; as, *I hurt myself ; he loves himself*.

Q. What is to be observed of verbs?

A. That they have four moods ; viz. the infinitive, indicative, subjunctive, and imperative ; and each mood has tenses,

Q. What

Q. What is a tense?

A. A tense expresses the time, in which something *was, is, or shall be.*

Q. What do you observe of tenses?

A. That they have two numbers, the singular and plural; and each number has three persons, called the first, second, and third, except the imperative, which has only two persons in the singular, *viz.* the second and the third.

Q. By what signs do you know these persons?

A. By the pronoun personal, or the substantive, that stands before them, as follows:

Singular.

First, *I.*

Second, *thou.*

Third, *he, she, it,* or a substantive singular.

Plural.

First, *we.*

Second, *ye, you.*

Third, *they,* or a substantive plural;

As, *I love, thou lovest, he loves, the master loves; we love, ye love, they love, the masters love.*

Q. How many tenses are there in each mood?

A. There are five in the indicative; *viz.* the present, the imperfect, the preterite, the future, and the conditional.

The subjunctive has two; *viz.* the present and the preterite.

The infinitive has three; *viz.* the present, the participle active, and participle past or passive.

The imperative has but the present.

Q. By what signs do we know the different tenses?

A. The present of the indicative denotes the present time; as, *I speak.* The imperfect has *did* before it as, *I did speak.* The preterite commonly ends with *d* and sometimes with *t*; as, *he loved, we brought.*

The future has *shall* or *will* before it; as, *he will come, I shall go.*

The conditional has *could, would, or should,* before it; as, *I should, could, or would write.*

The present of the subjunctive takes *may* before it, and its preterite *might*; as, *he may come, they might speak.*

The imperative commands, desires, entreats, exhorts; as, *come with me.* It takes *let* before every person, except the two second; as, *come thou, let him come, let us come, come ye, let them come.*

The infinitive is known by the sign *to* before it; as, *to speak.*

The participle active ends in *ing*; as, *speaking.*

The participle past generally ends in *d*, though sometimes in *t* or *n*; as, *loved, kept, given.*

C H A P. V.

Q. **W**HAT is meant by conjugations?

A. The manner in which regular verbs are conjugated.

Q. How many conjugations are there of *French* regular verbs?

A. Ten.

Q. By what mark do you know the conjugation of a verb?

A. By the ending of its infinitive.

Q. Are all verbs of the same ending conjugated alike?

A. No; some deviate from the general rule; for which reason they are called irregular.

Q. How do regular *French* verbs end in the infinitive?

A. In the following manner:

	Infinitive.		Part. Aët.	Part. past.
1:	<i>er,</i>	<i>parler,</i>	<i>ant,</i>	<i>é.</i>
2.	<i>ir,</i>	<i>punir;</i>	<i>issant,</i>	<i>i.</i>
3.	<i>tir,</i>	<i>sentir,</i>	<i>tant,</i>	<i>ti.</i>
4.	<i>enir,</i>	<i>tenir,</i>	<i>ant,</i>	<i>enu.</i>
5.	<i>evoir,</i>	<i>devoir,</i>	<i>ant,</i>	<i>u.</i>
				6. <i>aire,</i>

	<i>Infinitive.</i>		<i>Part. Act.</i>	<i>Part. past.</i>
6.	<i>aire,</i>	<i>faire,</i>	<i>esant,</i>	<i>ait.</i>
7.	<i>indre,</i>	<i>peindre,</i>	<i>gnant,</i>	<i>int.</i>
8.	<i>uire,</i>	<i>conduire,</i>	<i>uisant,</i>	<i>uit.</i>
9.	<i>oitre,</i>	<i>paroître,</i>	<i>oissant,</i>	<i>u.</i>
10.	<i>dre,</i>	<i>vendre,</i>	<i>dant,</i>	<i>du.</i>

The two following verbs are called auxiliary, and are conjugated thus :

	<i>Infinitive.</i>	
Present,	to have,	<i>avoir.</i>
Part. active,	having,	<i>ayant.</i>
Part. past,	had,	<i>eu.</i>

Present.—Indicative.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I have,	<i>j'ai.</i>	We have,	<i>nous avons.</i>
Thou hast,	<i>tu as.</i>	Ye or you have,	<i>vous avez.</i>
He or she has,	<i>il, or elle a.</i>	They have,	<i>ils ont, or elles ont.]</i>

Imperfect.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I had,	<i>j'avois.</i>	We had,	<i>nous avions.</i>
Thou hadst,	<i>tu avois.</i>	Ye had,	<i>vous aviez.</i>
He had,	<i>il avoit.</i>	They had,	<i>ils avoient.</i>

Preterite.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I had,	<i>j'eus.</i>	We had,	<i>nous eumes.</i>
Thou hadst,	<i>tu eus.</i>	Ye had,	<i>vous eutes.</i>
He had,	<i>il eut.</i>	They had,	<i>ils eurent.</i>

Future.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I shall or will have,	<i>j'aurai.</i>	We shall have,	<i>nous aurons.</i>
Thou shalt have,	<i>tu auras.</i>	Ye shall have,	<i>vous aurez.</i>
He shall have,	<i>il aura.</i>	They shall have,	<i>ils auront.</i>

Conditional.

Sing.	{	I should, could, or would have,	<i>j'aurois,</i>	
		Thou shouldst have,	<i>tu aurois,</i>	
		He should have,	<i>il auroit.</i>	
				<i>Plural.</i>

Plu.	{	We should have,	<i>nous aurions.</i>
		Ye should have,	<i>vous auriez.</i>
		They should have,	<i>ils auroient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	{	I may have,	<i>j'aie.</i>
		Thou mayest have,	<i>tu aies.</i>
		He may have,	<i>il ait.</i>
Plu.	{	We may have,	<i>nous ayons.</i>
		Ye may have,	<i>vous ayez.</i>
		They may have,	<i>ils aient.</i>

Preterite.

Sing.	{	I might have,	<i>j'eusse.</i>
		Thou mightest have,	<i>tu eusses.</i>
		He might have,	<i>il eût.</i>
Plu.	{	We might have,	<i>nous eussions.</i>
		Ye might have,	<i>vous eussiez.</i>
		They might have,	<i>ils eussent.</i>

Imperative.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Have thou,	<i>aie.</i>	Let us have,	<i>ayons.</i>
Let him have,	<i>qu'il ait.</i>	Have ye,	<i>ayez.</i>
		Let them have,	<i>qu'ils aient.</i>

To be.—Infinitive.

Present,	to be,	<i>etre.</i>
Participle pres.	being,	<i>étant.</i>
Participle pass.	been,	<i>été.</i>

INDICATIVE.

Present.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I am,	<i>je suis.</i>	We are,	<i>nous sommes.</i>
Thou art,	<i>tu es.</i>	Ye are,	<i>vous êtes.</i>
He is,	<i>il est.</i>	They are,	<i>ils sont.</i>

Imperfect.

Imperfect.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I was,	<i>j'étois.</i>	We were,	<i>nous étions.</i>
Thou wast,	<i>tu étois.</i>	Ye were,	<i>vous étiez.</i>
He was,	<i>il étoit.</i>	They were,	<i>ils étoient.</i>

Preterite.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I was,	<i>je fus.</i>	We were,	<i>nous fûmes.</i>
Thou wast,	<i>tu fus.</i>	Ye were,	<i>vous fûtes.</i>
He was,	<i>il fut.</i>	They were,	<i>ils furent.</i>

Future.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I shall or will be,	<i>je serai.</i>	We shall be,	<i>nous serons.</i>
Thou shalt be,	<i>tu seras.</i>	Ye shall be,	<i>vous serez.</i>
He shall be,	<i>il sera.</i>	They shall be,	<i>ils seront.</i>

Conditional.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I should, could, or would be,	<i>je serois.</i>
		Thou shouldest be,	<i>tu serois.</i>
		He should be,	<i>il seroit.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We should be,	<i>nous serions.</i>
		Ye should be,	<i>vous seriez.</i>
		They should be,	<i>ils seroient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.*Present.*

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I may be,	<i>je sois.</i>	We may be,	<i>nous soyons.</i>
Thou mayest be,	<i>tu sois.</i>	Ye may be,	<i>vous soyez.</i>
He may be,	<i>il soit.</i>	They may be,	<i>ils soient.</i>

Preterite.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I might be,	<i>je fusse.</i>
		Thou mightest be,	<i>tu fusses.</i>
		He might be,	<i>il fût.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We might be,	<i>nous fussions.</i>
		Ye might be,	<i>vous fussiez.</i>
		They might be,	<i>ils fussent.</i>

Imperative.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Be thou,	<i>sois.</i>	Let us be,	<i>soyons.</i>
Let him be,	<i>qu'il soit.</i>	Be ye,	<i>soyez.</i>
		Let them be,	<i>qu'ils soient.</i>

VERBS REGULAR :—*First Conjugation, er.**Infinitive.*

Present,	to love,	<i>aimer.</i>
Participle act.	loving,	<i>aimant.</i>
Participle pass.	loved,	<i>aimé.</i>

INDICATIVE.

Present.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I love,	<i>j'aime.</i>	We love,	<i>nous aimons.</i>
Thou lovest,	<i>tu aimes.</i>	Ye love,	<i>vous aimez.</i>
He loves,	<i>il aime.</i>	They love,	<i>ils aiment.</i>

Imperfect.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I did love,	<i>j'aimois.</i>	We did love,	<i>nous aimions.</i>
Thou didst love,	<i>tu aimois.</i>	Ye did love,	<i>vous aimiez.</i>
He did love,	<i>il aimoit.</i>	They did love,	<i>ils aimoient.</i>

Preterite.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I loved,	<i>j'aimai.</i>	We loved,	<i>nous aimâmes.</i>
Thou lovedst,	<i>tu aimas.</i>	Ye loved,	<i>vous aimâtes.</i>
He loved,	<i>il aima.</i>	They loved,	<i>ils aimerent.</i>

Future.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I shall or will love,	<i>j'aimerai.</i>
		Thou shalt love,	<i>tu aimeras.</i>
		He shall love,	<i>il aimera.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We shall love,	<i>nous aimerons.</i>
		Ye shall love,	<i>vous aimerez.</i>
		They shall love,	<i>ils aimeront.</i>

Plu.

Conditional.

Sing.	{	I should, could, or would love,	<i>j'aimerois.</i>
		Thou shouldst love,	<i>tu aimerois.</i>
		He should love,	<i>il aimerait.</i>
Plu.	{	We should love,	<i>nous aimerions.</i>
		Ye should love,	<i>vous aimeriez.</i>
		They should love,	<i>ils aimeraient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Singular.		Plural.	
I may love,	<i>j'aime.</i>	We may love,	<i>nous aimions.</i>
Thou mayst love,	<i>tu aimes.</i>	Ye may love,	<i>vous aimiez.</i>
He may love,	<i>il aime.</i>	They may love,	<i>ils aiment.</i>

Preterite.

Sing.	{	I might love,	<i>j'aimasse.</i>
		Thou mightest love,	<i>tu aimasses.</i>
		He might love,	<i>il aimât.</i>
Plu.	{	We might love,	<i>nous aimassions.</i>
		Ye might love,	<i>vous aimassiez.</i>
		They might love,	<i>ils aimassent.</i>

Imperative.

Singular.		Plural.	
Love thou,	<i>aime.</i>	Let us love,	<i>aimons.</i>
Let him love,	<i>qu'il aime.</i>	Love ye,	<i>aimez.</i>
		Let them love,	<i>qu'ils aiment.</i>

There are two verbs irregular of this conjugation,
viz. *aller*, *puer*.

Second Conjugation, ir.

Infinitive.

Present,	to punish,	<i>punir.</i>
Participle act.	punishing,	<i>punissant.</i>
Participle pass.	punished,	<i>puni.</i>

INDICATIVE.

Present.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
I punish,	<i>je punis.</i>	We punish, <i>nous punissons.</i>
Thou punishest,	<i>tu punis.</i>	Ye punish, <i>vous punissez.</i>
He punishes,	<i>il punit.</i>	They punish, <i>ils punissent.</i>

Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I did punish,	<i>je punissois.</i>
		Thou didst punish,	<i>tu punissois.</i>
		He did punish,	<i>il punissoit.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We did punish,	<i>nous punissions.</i>
		Ye did punish,	<i>vous punissiez.</i>
		They did punish,	<i>ils punissaient.</i>

Preterite.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
I punished,	<i>je punis.</i>	We punished, <i>nous punîmes.</i>
Thou punishedst,	<i>tu punis.</i>	Ye punished, <i>vous punîtes.</i>
He punished,	<i>il punit.</i>	They punished, <i>ils punirent.</i>

Future.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I shall or will punish,	<i>je punirai.</i>
		Thou shalt punish,	<i>tu puniras.</i>
		He shall punish,	<i>il punira.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We shall punish,	<i>nous punirons.</i>
		Ye shall punish,	<i>vous punirez.</i>
		They shall punish,	<i>ils puniront.</i>

Conditional.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I should punish,	<i>je punirois.</i>
		Thou shouldst punish,	<i>tu punirois,</i>
		He should punish,	<i>il puniroit.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We should punish,	<i>nous punirions.</i>
		Ye should punish,	<i>vous puniriez.</i>
		They should punish,	<i>ils puniroient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I may punish,	<i>je punisse.</i>
		Thou mayest punish,	<i>tu punisses.</i>
		He may punish,	<i>il punisse.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We may punish,	<i>nous punissions.</i>
		Ye may punish,	<i>vous punissiez.</i>
		They may punish,	<i>ils punissent.</i>

Preterite.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I might punish,	<i>je punisse.</i>
		Thou mightst punish,	<i>tu punisses.</i>
		He might punish,	<i>il punît.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We might punish,	<i>nous punissions.</i>
		Ye might punish,	<i>vous punissiez.</i>
		They might punish,	<i>ils punissent.</i>

Imperative.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	Punish thou,	<i>punis.</i>
		Let him punish,	<i>qu'il punisse.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	Let us punish,	<i>punissons.</i>
		Punish ye,	<i>punissez.</i>
		Let them punish,	<i>qu'ils punissent.</i>

*Third Conjugation, tir.**Infinitive.*

Present,	to smell,	<i>sentir.</i>
Participle act.	smelling,	<i>sentant.</i>
Participle pass.	smelt,	<i>senti.</i>

INDICATIVE.

Present.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I smell,	<i>je sens.</i>	We smell,	<i>nous sentons.</i>
Thou smellest,	<i>tu sens.</i>	Ye smell,	<i>vous sentez.</i>
He smells,	<i>il sent.</i>	They smell,	<i>ils sentent.</i>

Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I did smell,	<i>je sentois.</i>
		Thou didst smell,	<i>tu sentois.</i>
		He did smell,	<i>il sentoit.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We did smell,	<i>nous sentions.</i>
		Ye did smell,	<i>vous sentiez.</i>
		They did smell,	<i>ils sentoient.</i>

Preterite.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I smelt,	<i>je sentis.</i>	We smelt,	<i>nous sentimes.</i>
Thou smeltest,	<i>tu sentis.</i>	Ye smelt,	<i>vous sentites.</i>
He smelt,	<i>il sentit.</i>	They smelt,	<i>ils sentirent.</i>

Future.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I will smell,	<i>je sentirai.</i>
		Thou wilt smell,	<i>tu sentiras.</i>
		He will smell,	<i>il sentira.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We will smell,	<i>nous sentirons.</i>
		Ye will smell,	<i>vous sentirez.</i>
		They will smell,	<i>ils sentiront.</i>

Conditional.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I would smell,	<i>je sentirois.</i>
		Thou wouldst smell,	<i>tu sentirois.</i>
		He would smell,	<i>il sentiroit.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We would smell,	<i>nous sentirions.</i>
		Ye would smell,	<i>vous sentiriez.</i>
		They would smell,	<i>ils sentiroient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Présent.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I may smell,	<i>je sente.</i>
		Thou mayst smell,	<i>tu sentes.</i>
		He may smell,	<i>il sente.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We may smell,	<i>nous sentions.</i>
		Ye may smell,	<i>vous sentiez.</i>
		They may smell,	<i>ils sentent.</i>

Preterite.

Preterite.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I might smell,	<i>je sentisse.</i>
		Thou mightst smell,	<i>tu sentisses.</i>
		He might smell,	<i>il sentit.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We might smell,	<i>nous sentissions.</i>
		Ye might smell,	<i>vous sentissiez.</i>
		They might smell,	<i>ils sentissent.</i>

Imperative.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Smell thou,	<i>sens.</i>	Let us smell,	<i>sentons.</i>
Let him smell,	<i>qu'il sente.</i>	Smell ye,	<i>sentez.</i>
		Let them smell,	<i>qu'ils sentent.</i>

*The fourth Conjugation, enir.**Infinitive.*

Present,	to prevent,	<i>prévenir.</i>
Participle act.	preventing,	<i>prévénant.</i>
Participle pass.	prevented,	<i>prévenu.</i>

*INDICATIVE.**Present.*

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I prevent,	<i>je prévien.</i>
		Thou preventest,	<i>tu prévien.</i>
		He prevents,	<i>il prévient.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We prevent,	<i>nous prévenons.</i>
		Ye prevent,	<i>vous prévenez.</i>
		They prevent,	<i>ils préviennent.</i>

Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I did prevent,	<i>je prévenois.</i>
		Thou didst prevent,	<i>tu prévenois.</i>
		He did prevent,	<i>il prévenoit.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We did prevent,	<i>nous prévenions.</i>
		Ye did prevent,	<i>vous préveniez.</i>
		They did prevent,	<i>ils prévenaient.</i>

Preterite.

Preterite.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I prevented,	<i>je prévins.</i>
		Thou preventedst,	<i>tu prévins.</i>
		He prevented,	<i>il prévint.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We prevented,	<i>nous prévinmes.</i>
		Ye prevented,	<i>vous prévintes.</i>
		They prevented,	<i>ils prévirent.</i>

Future.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I shall prevent,	<i>je prévoirai.</i>
		Thou shalt prevent,	<i>tu prévoiendras.</i>
		He shall prevent,	<i>il prévoiendra.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We shall prevent,	<i>nous prévoiendrons.</i>
		Ye shall prevent,	<i>vous prévoiendrez.</i>
		They shall prevent,	<i>ils prévoiendront.</i>

Conditional.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I should prevent,	<i>je prévoiendrois.</i>
		Thou shouldst prevent,	<i>tu prévoiendrois.</i>
		He should prevent,	<i>il prévoiendrait.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We should prevent,	<i>nous prévoiendrions.</i>
		Ye should prevent,	<i>vous prévoiendriez.</i>
		They should prevent,	<i>ils prévoiendraient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I may prevent,	<i>je prévienne.</i>
		Thou mayest prevent,	<i>tu préviennes.</i>
		He may prevent,	<i>il prévienne.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We may prevent,	<i>nous prévenions.</i>
		Ye may prevent,	<i>vous préveniez.</i>
		They may prevent,	<i>ils préviennent.</i>

Preterite.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I might prevent,	<i>je prévinsse.</i>
		Thou mightest prevent,	<i>tu prévinsses.</i>
		He might prevent,	<i>il prévint.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We might prevent,	<i>nous prévinsissions.</i>
		Ye might prevent,	<i>vous prévinsissiez.</i>
		They might prevent,	<i>ils prévinsissent.</i>

Imperative.

Imperative.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	Prevent thou,	<i>previens.</i>
		Let him prevent,	<i>qu'il previenne.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	Let us prevent,	<i>prevenons.</i>
		Prevent ye,	<i>prevenez.</i>
		Let them prevent,	<i>qu'ils previennent.</i>

The following verbs make their compounds with *etre*, and not with *avoir*.—*Convenir, devenir, disconvenir, parvenir, provenir, venir, survenir, revenir.*

*The fifth Conjugation, evoir.**Infinitive.*

Present,	to owe,	<i>devoir.</i>
Participle act.	owing,	<i>devant.</i>
Participle pass.	owed,	<i>dû.</i>

Indicative.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I owe,	<i>je dois.</i>	We owe,	<i>nous devons.</i>
Thou owest,	<i>tu dois.</i>	Ye owe,	<i>vous devez.</i>
He owes,	<i>il doit.</i>	They owe,	<i>ils doivent.</i>

Imperfect.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I did owe,	<i>je devois.</i>	We did owe,	<i>nous devions.</i>
Thou didst owe,	<i>tu devois.</i>	Ye did owe,	<i>vous deviez.</i>
He did owe,	<i>il devoit.</i>	They did owe,	<i>ils devoient.</i>

Preterite.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I owed,	<i>je dus.</i>	We owed,	<i>nous dumes.</i>
Thou owedst,	<i>tu dus.</i>	Ye owed,	<i>vous dutes.</i>
He owed,	<i>il dut.</i>	They owed,	<i>ils durent.</i>

Future.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I shall owe,	<i>je devrai.</i>
		Thou shalt owe,	<i>tu devras.</i>
		He shall owe,	<i>il devra.</i>

Plu.

Plu.	{	We shall owe,	<i>nous devons.</i>
		Ye shall owe,	<i>vous devrez.</i>
		They shall owe,	<i>ils devront.</i>

Conditional.

Sing.	{	I should owe,	<i>je devrois.</i>
		Thou shouldst owe,	<i>tu devrois.</i>
		He should owe,	<i>il devroit.</i>
Plu.	{	We should owe,	<i>nous devrions.</i>
		Ye should owe,	<i>vous devriez.</i>
		They should owe,	<i>ils devroient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Singular.

Plural.

I may owe,	<i>je doive.</i>	We may owe,	<i>nous devions.</i>
Thou mayst owe,	<i>tu doives.</i>	Ye may owe,	<i>vous deviez.</i>
He may owe,	<i>il doive.</i>	They may owe,	<i>ils doivent.</i>

Preterite.

Sing.	{	I might owe,	<i>je dusse.</i>
		Thou mightest owe,	<i>tu dusses.</i>
		He might owe,	<i>il dût.</i>
Plu.	{	We might owe,	<i>nous dussions.</i>
		Ye might owe,	<i>vous dussiez.</i>
		They might owe,	<i>ils dussent.</i>

Imperative.

Singular.

Plural.

Owe thou,	<i>dois.</i>	Let us owe,	<i>devons.</i>
Let him owe,	<i>qu'il doive.</i>	Owe ye,	<i>devez.</i>
		Let them owe,	<i>qu'ils doivent.</i>

The sixth Conjugation, *aire*.

Infinitive.

Present,	to do,	<i>faire.</i>
Participle act.	doing,	<i>fesant.</i>
Participle pass.	done,	<i>fait.</i>

INDICATIVE.

Present.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I do,	<i>je fais.</i>	We do,	<i>nous faisons.</i>
Thou doest,	<i>tu fais.</i>	Ye do,	<i>vous faites.</i>
He does,	<i>il fait.</i>	They do,	<i>ils font.</i>

Imperfect.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I did do,	<i>je faisois.</i>	We did do,	<i>nous faisions.</i>
Thou didst do,	<i>tu faisois.</i>	Ye did do,	<i>vous faiez.</i>
He did do,	<i>il faisoit.</i>	They did do,	<i>ils faisoient.</i>

Preterite.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I did,	<i>je fis.</i>	We did,	<i>nous fimes.</i>
Thou didst,	<i>tu fis.</i>	Ye did,	<i>vous fites.</i>
He did,	<i>il fit.</i>	They did,	<i>ils firent.</i>

Future.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I shall do,	<i>je ferai.</i>	We shall do,	<i>nous ferons.</i>
Thou shalt do,	<i>tu feras.</i>	Ye shall do,	<i>vous ferez.</i>
He shall do,	<i>il fera.</i>	They shall do,	<i>ils feront.</i>

Conditional.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I should do,	<i>je ferois.</i>
		Thou shouldst do,	<i>tu ferois.</i>
		He should do,	<i>il feroit.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We should do,	<i>nous ferions.</i>
		Ye should do,	<i>vous feriez.</i>
		They should do,	<i>ils feroient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I may do,	<i>je fasse.</i>	We may do,	<i>nous fassions.</i>
Thou mayst do,	<i>tu fasses.</i>	Ye may do,	<i>vous fassiez.</i>
He may do,	<i>il fasse.</i>	They may do,	<i>ils fassent.</i>

Preterite.

*Preterite.**Singular.*

I might do, *je fissé.*
 Thou mightest do, *tu fisses.*
 He might do, *il fit.*

Plural.

We might do, *nous fissions.*
 Ye might do, *vous fissiez.*
 They might do, *ils fissent.*

*Imperative.**Singular.*

Do thou, *fais.*
 Let him do, *qu'il fasse.*

Plural.

Let us do, *faisons,*
 Do ye, *faites,*
 Let them do, *qu'ils fassent.*

*The seventh Conjugation, indre.**Infinitive.*

Present,	to join,	<i>joindre.</i>
Participle act.	joining,	<i>joignant.</i>
Participle pass.	joined,	<i>joint.</i>

*Indicative.**Singular.*

I join, *je joins.*
 Thou joinest, *tu joins.*
 He joins, *il joint.*

Plural.

We join, *nous joignons.*
 Ye join, *vous joignez.*
 They join, *ils joignent.*

*Imperfect.**Singular.*

I did join, *je joignois.*
 Thou didst join, *tu joignois.*
 He did join, *il joignoit.*

Plural.

We did join, *nous joignions.*
 Ye did join, *vous joigniez.*
 They did join, *ils joignoient.*

*Preterite.**Singular.*

I joined, *je joignis.*
 Thou joinedst, *tu joignis.*
 He joined, *il joignit.*

Plural.

We joined, *nous joignîmes.*
 Ye joined, *vous joignîtes.*
 They joined, *ils joignirent.*

*Future.**Sing.*

I shall join,
 Thou shalt join,
 He shall join,

je joindrai.
tu joindras.
il joindra.

Plu.

Plu.	{	We shall join,	<i>nous joindrons.</i>
		Ye shall join,	<i>vous joindrez.</i>
		They shall join,	<i>ils joindront.</i>

Conditional.

Sing.	{	I should join,	<i>je joindrois.</i>
		Thou shouldst join,	<i>tu joindrois.</i>
		He should join,	<i>il joindroit.</i>
Plu.	{	We should join,	<i>nous joindrions.</i>
		Ye should join,	<i>vous joindriez.</i>
		They should join,	<i>ils joindraient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Sing.	{	I may join,	<i>je joigne.</i>
		Thou mayst join,	<i>tu joigne.</i>
		He may join,	<i>il joigne.</i>
Plu.	{	We may join,	<i>nous joignons.</i>
		Ye may join,	<i>vous joigniez.</i>
		They may join,	<i>ils joignent.</i>

Preterite.

Sing.	{	I might join,	<i>je joignisse.</i>
		Thou mightst join,	<i>tu joignisses.</i>
		He might join,	<i>il joignît.</i>
Plu.	{	We might join,	<i>nous joignissions.</i>
		Ye might join,	<i>vous joignissiez.</i>
		They might join,	<i>ils joignissent.</i>

Imperative.

Sing.	{	Join thou,	<i>joins.</i>
		Let him join,	<i>qu'il joigne.</i>
Plu.	{	Let us join,	<i>joignons.</i>
		Join ye,	<i>joignez.</i>
		Let them join,	<i>qu'ils joignent.</i>

*Verbs of the eighth Conjugation, oître.**Infinite.*

Present,	to know,	<i>connoître.</i>
Participle act.	knowing,	<i>connoissant.</i>
Participle pass.	known,	<i>connu.</i>

Indicative.

Singular.

Plural.

I know, *je connois.* We know, *nous connoissons.*
 Thou knowest, *tu connois.* Ye know, *vous connoissez.*
 He knows, *il connoit.* They know, *ils connoissent.*

Imperfect.

Sing. { I did know, *je connoissois.*
 { Thou didst know, *tu connoissois.*
 { He did know, *il connoissoit.*
Plu. { We did know, *nous connoissions.*
 { Ye did know, *vous connoissiez.*
 { They did know, *ils connoissoient.*

Preterite.

Singular.

Plural.

I knew, *je connus.* We knew, *nous connûmes.*
 Thou knewest, *tu connus.* Ye knew, *vous connûtes.*
 He knew, *il connut.* They knew, *ils connurent.*

Future.

Sing. { I shall know, *je connoîtrai.*
 { Thou shalt know, *tu connoîtras.*
 { He shall know, *il connoîtra.*
Plu. { We shall know, *nous connoîtrons.*
 { Ye shall know, *vous connoîtrez.*
 { They shall know, *ils connoîtront.*

Conditional.

Sing. { I should know, *je connoitrois.*
 { Thou shouldst know, *tu connoitrois.*
 { He should know, *il connoitroit.*
Plu. { We should know, *nous connoîtrions.*
 { Ye should know, *vous connoitriez.*
 { They should know, *ils connoitroient.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Sing. { I may know, *je connoisse.*
 { Thou mayst know, *tu connoisses.*
 { He may know, *il connoisse.*
 { We may know, *nous connoissions.*
Plu. { Ye may know, *vous connoissiez.*
 { They may know, *ils connoissent.*

Pre-

Preterite.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I might know,	<i>je connusse.</i>
		Thou mightst know,	<i>tu connusses.</i>
		He might know,	<i>il connut.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We might know,	<i>nous connussions.</i>
		Ye might know,	<i>vous connussiez.</i>
		They might know,	<i>ils connussent.</i>

Imperative.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	Know thou,	<i>connois.</i>
		Let him know,	<i>qu'il connoisse.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	Let us know,	<i>connoissons.</i>
		Know ye,	<i>connoissez.</i>
		Let them know,	<i>qu'ils connoissent.</i>

The ninth Conjugation, uire.

Infinitive.

Present,	to produce,	<i>produire.</i>
Participle act.	producing,	<i>produisant.</i>
Participle pass.	produced,	<i>produit.</i>

INDICATIVE.

Present.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I produce,	<i>je produis.</i>
		Thou producest,	<i>tu produis.</i>
		He produces,	<i>il produit.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We produce,	<i>nous produisons.</i>
		Ye produce,	<i>vous produisez.</i>
		They produce,	<i>ils produisent.</i>

Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I did produce,	<i>je produisois.</i>
		Thou didst produce,	<i>tu produisois.</i>
		He did produce,	<i>il produisoit.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We did produce,	<i>nous produisions.</i>
		Ye did produce,	<i>vous produisiez.</i>
		They did produce,	<i>ils produisoient.</i>

Preterite.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I produced,	<i>je produisis.</i>
		Thou producedst,	<i>tu produisis.</i>
		He produced,	<i>il produisit.</i>

Plu.	{	We produced,	<i>nous produisîmes.</i>
		Ye produced,	<i>vous produisîtes.</i>
		They produced,	<i>ils produisirent.</i>

Future.

Sing.	{	I will produce,	<i>je produirai.</i>
		Thou wilt produce,	<i>tu produiras.</i>
		He will produce,	<i>il produira.</i>
Plu.	{	We will produce,	<i>nous produirons.</i>
		Ye will produce,	<i>vous produirez.</i>
		They will produce,	<i>ils produiront.</i>

Conditional.

Sing.	{	I should produce,	<i>je produirois.</i>
		Thou shouldst produce,	<i>tu produirois.</i>
		He should produce,	<i>il produiroit.</i>
Plu.	{	We should produce,	<i>nous produirions.</i>
		Ye should produce,	<i>vous produiriez.</i>
		They should produce,	<i>ils produiroient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present Tense.

Sing.	{	I may produce,	<i>je produise.</i>
		Thou mayst produce,	<i>tu produises.</i>
		He may produce,	<i>il produise.</i>
Plu.	{	We may produce,	<i>nous produisions.</i>
		Ye may produce,	<i>vous produisiez.</i>
		They may produce,	<i>ils produissent.</i>

Preterite.

Sing.	{	I might produce,	<i>je produisîsse.</i>
		Thou mightst produce,	<i>tu produisîsses.</i>
		He might produce,	<i>il produisît.</i>
Plu.	{	We might produce,	<i>nous produisissions.</i>
		Ye might produce,	<i>vous produisissiez.</i>
		They might produce,	<i>ils produisissent.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

Present.

Sing.	{	Produce thou,	<i>produis.</i>
		Let him produce,	<i>qu'il produise.</i>

Plu.

Plu.	{	Let us produce,	<i>produisons.</i>
		Produce ye,	<i>produisez.</i>
		Let them produce,	<i>qu'ils produisent.</i>

The tenth Conjugation, dre.

Infinitive.

Present,	to sell,	<i>vendre.</i>
Participle act.	selling,	<i>vendant.</i>
Participle pass.	sold,	<i>vendu.</i>

INDICATIVE.

Present.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I sell,	<i>je vends.</i>	We sell,	<i>nous vendons.</i>
Thou sellest,	<i>tu vends.</i>	Ye sell,	<i>vous vendez.</i>
He sells,	<i>il vend.</i>	They sell,	<i>ils vendent.</i>

Imperfect.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I did sell,	<i>je vendois.</i>	We did sell,	<i>nous vendions.</i>
Thou didst sell,	<i>tu vendois,</i>	Ye did sell,	<i>vous vendiez.</i>
He did sell,	<i>il vendoit.</i>	They did sell,	<i>ils vendaient.</i>

Preterite.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I sold,	<i>je vendis.</i>	We sold,	<i>nous vendîmes.</i>
Thou soldest,	<i>tu vendis.</i>	Ye sold,	<i>vous vendîtes.</i>
He sold,	<i>il vendit.</i>	They sold,	<i>ils vendirent.</i>

Future.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I shall sell,	<i>je vendrai.</i>	We shall sell,	<i>nous vendrons.</i>
Thou shalt sell,	<i>tu vendras.</i>	Ye shall sell,	<i>vous vendrez.</i>
He shall sell,	<i>il vendra.</i>	They shall sell,	<i>ils vendront.</i>

Conditional.

Sing.	{	I should sell,	<i>je vendrois.</i>
		Thou shouldst sell,	<i>tu vendrois.</i>
		He should sell,	<i>il vendrait.</i>
Plu.	{	We should sell,	<i>nous vendrions.</i>
		Ye should sell,	<i>vous vendriez.</i>
		They should sell,	<i>ils vendraient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I may sell,	<i>je vende</i>
		Thou mayst sell,	<i>tu vendes.</i>
		He may sell,	<i>il vende.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We may sell,	<i>nous vendions.</i>
		Ye may sell,	<i>vous vendiez.</i>
		They may sell,	<i>ils vendent.</i>

Preterite.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I might sell,	<i>je vendisse.</i>
		Thou mightest sell,	<i>tu vendisses.</i>
		He might sell,	<i>il vendit.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We might sell,	<i>nous vendissions.</i>
		Ye might sell,	<i>vous vendissiez.</i>
		They might sell,	<i>ils vendissent.</i>

Imperative.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	Sell thou,	<i>vends.</i>
		Let him sell,	<i>qu'il vende.</i>
		Let us sell,	<i>vendons.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	Sell ye,	<i>vendez.</i>
		Let them sell,	<i>qu'ils vendent.</i>

VERBS REFLECTED.

These verbs are conjugated with two pronouns personal before every person; the one nominative, and the other accusative, as follows: *je me, tu te, il se, nous nous, vous vous, ils se*. If a question is asked, the pronoun nominative comes after the verb, and the other before it, as, *Do I rise? Me leve je?* It is to be observed, that all verbs reflected, and the following, make their compounds in *French* with the verb *être*, not with *avoir*, as in *English*: *aller, aborder, accourir, arriver, céder, descendre, entrer, monter, mourir, naître, partir, retourner, sortir, tomber*, and their derivatives.

Infinitive.

Present,	to rise,	<i>se lever.</i>
Participle act.	rising,	<i>se levant.</i>
Participle pass.	risen,	<i>levé.</i>

INDICA

INDICATIVE.

Present.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
I rise,	<i>je me lève.</i>	We rise,	<i>nous nous levons.</i>
Thou risest,	<i>tu te lève.</i>	Ye rise,	<i>vouz vous levez.</i>
He rises,	<i>il se lève.</i>	They rise,	<i>ils se lèvent.</i>

Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I did rise,	<i>je me levois.</i>
		Thou didst rise,	<i>tu te levois.</i>
		He did rise,	<i>il se levoit.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We did rise,	<i>nous nous levions.</i>
		Ye did rise,	<i>vous vous leviez.</i>
		They did rise,	<i>ils se levoient.</i>

Preterite.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
I rose,	<i>je me levai.</i>	We rose,	<i>nous nous levâmes.</i>
Thou rosest,	<i>tu te levas.</i>	Ye rose,	<i>vous vous levâtes.</i>
He rose,	<i>il se leva.</i>	They rose,	<i>ils se levèrent.</i>

Future.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I shall rise,	<i>je me lèverai.</i>
		Thou shalt rise,	<i>tu te lèveras.</i>
		He shall rise,	<i>il se lèvera.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We shall rise,	<i>nous nous lèverons.</i>
		Ye shall rise,	<i>vous vous lèverez.</i>
		They shall rise,	<i>ils se lèveront.</i>

Conditional.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I should rise,	<i>je me leverois.</i>
		Thou shouldst rise,	<i>tu te leverois.</i>
		He should rise,	<i>il se leveroit.</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	{	We should rise,	<i>nous nous leverions.</i>
		Ye should rise,	<i>vous vous leveriez.</i>
		They should rise,	<i>ils se leveroient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I may rise,	<i>je me lève.</i>
		Thou mayst rise,	<i>tu te lèves.</i>
		He may rise,	<i>il se lève.</i>

Plu.

Plu.	{	We may rise,	<i>nous nous levions.</i>
		Ye may rise,	<i>vous vous leviez.</i>
		They may rise,	<i>ils se levent.</i>

Preterite.

Sing.	{	I might rise,	<i>je me levasse.</i>
		Thou mightst rise,	<i>tu te levasses.</i>
		He might rise,	<i>il se levât.</i>
Plu.	{	We might rise,	<i>nous nous levassions.</i>
		Ye might rise,	<i>vous vous levassiez.</i>
		They might rise,	<i>ils se levassent.</i>

Imperative.

Sing.	{	Rise thou,	<i>lève toi.</i>
		Let him rise,	<i>qu'il se lève.</i>
		Let us rise,	<i>levons nous.</i>
Plu.	{	Rise ye,	<i>levez vous.</i>
		Let them rise,	<i>qu'ils se levent.</i>

Compounds.

I have risen,	<i>je me suis levé, &c.</i>
I had risen,	<i>je m'étois, or je me fus levé, &c.</i>
I shall have risen,	<i>je me serai levé, &c.</i>
I should have risen,	<i>je me serois levé, &c.</i>
I may have risen,	<i>je me sois levé, &c.</i>
I might have risen,	<i>je me fusse levé, &c.</i>

VERBS IRREGULAR.

Infinitive.

Present,	to go,	<i>aller.</i>
Participle act.	going,	<i>allant.</i>
Participle pass.	gone,	<i>allé.</i>

INDICATIVE.

Present.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
go,	<i>je vais.</i>	We go, <i>nous allons.</i>
Thou goest,	<i>tu vas.</i>	Ye go, <i>vous allez.</i>
He goes,	<i>il va.</i>	They go, <i>ils vont.</i>

Imperfect.

*Imperfect.**Singular.**Plural.*

I did go,	<i>j'allois.</i>	We did go,	<i>nous allions.</i>
Thou didst go,	<i>tu allois.</i>	Ye did go,	<i>vous alliez.</i>
He did go,	<i>il alloit.</i>	They did go,	<i>ils alloient.</i>

*Preterite.**Singular.**Plural.*

I went,	<i>j'allai.</i>	We went,	<i>nous allames.</i>
Thou wentest,	<i>tu allas.</i>	Ye went,	<i>vous allates.</i>
He went,	<i>il alla.</i>	They went,	<i>ils allerent.</i>

*Future.**Singular.**Plural.*

I shall go,	<i>j'irai.</i>	We shall go,	<i>nous irons.</i>
Thou shalt go,	<i>tu iras.</i>	Ye shall go,	<i>vous irez.</i>
He shall go,	<i>il ira.</i>	They shall go,	<i>ils iront.</i>

*Conditional.**Singular.**Plural.*

I should go,	<i>j'irois.</i>	We should go,	<i>nous irions.</i>
Thou shouldst go,	<i>tu irois.</i>	Ye should go,	<i>vous iriez.</i>
He should go,	<i>il iroit.</i>	They should go,	<i>ils iroient.</i>

*Imperative.**Singular.**Plural.*

Go thou,	<i>vas.</i>	Let us go,	<i>allons.</i>
Let him go,	<i>qu'il aille.</i>	Go ye,	<i>allez.</i>
		Let them go,	<i>qu'ils aillent.</i>

Compounds.

I have gone,	<i>je suis allé, &c.</i>
I had gone,	<i>j'étois allé, &c.</i>
I shall have gone,	<i>je serai allé, &c.</i>
I should have gone,	<i>je serois allé, &c.</i>
I may have gone,	<i>je sois allé, &c.</i>
I might have gone,	<i>je fusse allé, &c.</i>

Puer makes *je pus, tu pus, il put*, in the indicative.

Envoyer makes *j'enverrai, j'enverrois*, instead of *j'envoierai, j'envoierois*.

All the other verbs in *er* are regular.

To go away, *s'en aller*, is a reflected verb.

I go away, *je m'en vais, tu t'en vas, il s'en va, &c.*

VERBS IRREGULAR in *ir*, *tir*.

	Infinitive.	
Present,	to acquire,	<i>acquérir.</i>
Participle act.	acquiring	<i>acquérant.</i>
Participle pass.	acquired,	<i>acquis</i>

Indic. I acquire, *j'acquiers, tu acquiers, il acquiert :* nous *acquérons, vous acquérez, ils acquièrent.*

Imperf. I did acquire, *j'acquérois, tu acquérois, il acqueroit :* nous *acquérions, vous acquériez, ils acqueroient.*

Pret. I acquired, *j'acquis, tu aquis, il aquit :* nous *aquimes, vous aquites, ils acquirent.*

Fut. I shall acquire, *j'acquerrai, tu aquerras, il aquerra :* nous *aquerrons, vous aquerrez, ils aquerront.*

Cond. I should acquire, *j'acquerois, tu aquerrois, il aquerroit :* nous *aquérions, vous aquériez, ils aquerroient.*

Subj. I may acquire, *j'acquierre, tu aquierres, il aquiere :* nous *aquierions, vous aquieriez, ils aquierent.*

Pret. I might acquire, *aquisse, aquisses, aquit :* nous *aquissions, aquissiez, aquissent.*

Imper. acquire, *acquiers, qu'il aquierre :* nous *aquerrons, aquerez, qu'ils aquerrent.*

Conquerir, is only used in the infinitive, imperfect, and preterite:

	To boil.	
Infinitive,	to boil,	<i>bouillir.</i>
Participle act.	boiling,	<i>bouillant.</i>
Participle pass.	boiled,	<i>bouilli.</i>

Indic. I boil, *je bous, ous, out :* nous *bouillons, ez, ent.*

Imperf. I did boil, *je bouillois, ois, oît :* nous *bouillions, iez, oient.*

Pret. I boiled, *je bouillis, is, ît :* nous *bouillimes, ites, irent.*

Fut. I shall boil, *je bouillirai, ras, ra :* nous *bouillirons, rez, ront.*

Condit. I should boil, *je bouillirois, rois, roit :* nous *bouillirions, riez, roient.*

Subj. I may boil, *je bouille, es, e :* nous *bouillions, iez, ent.*

Pret.

Pret. I might boil, *je bouillisse, es, it : nous bouillissions, issiez, issent.*

Imper. boil, *bous, qu'il bouille : bouillions, bouilliez, qu'ils bouillent.*

To run, *courir.*

Participle act. running, courant.

Participle pass. run, couru.

Indic. *je cours, ours, ourt : nous courons, ez, ent.*

Imperf. *je courois, ois, oit : nous courions, iez, oient.*

Pret. *je courus, us, ut : nous courumes, utes, urent.*

Fut. *je courrai, ras, ra : nous courrons, rez, ront.*

Condit. *je courrois, rois, roit : nous courrions, riez, roient.*

Subj. *je courre, res, re : nous courrions, iez, ent.*

Pret. *je courusse, usses,ût : nous courussions, ussiez, ussent.*

Imper. *cours, qu'il coure : courons, courez, qu'ils courent.*

After the same manner are conjugated the following verbs, *accourir, concourir, encourir, discourir, parcourir, recourir, secourir.*

To gather, *cueillir.*

Participle act. gathering, cueillant.

Participle pass. gathered, cueilli.

Indic. *je cueille, es, e : nous cueillons, ez, ent.*

Imperf. *je cueillois, ois, oit : nous cuillions, iez, oient.*

Pret. *je cueillis, is, it : nous cueillimes, ites, irent.*

Fut. *je cueillirai, ras, ra : nous cueillirons, irez, ront.*

Condit. *je cueillirois, rois, roit : nous cueillirions, riez, roient.*

Subj. *je cueille, es, e : nous cueillions, iez, ent.*

Pret. *je cueillisse, es, it : nous cueillissions, issiez, issent.*

Imper. *cueille, qu'il cueille : cueillons, cueillez, qu'ils cueillent.*

To sleep, *dormir.*

Participle act. sleeping, dormant.

Participle pass. slept, dormi.

Indic. *je dors, ors, ort : nous dormons, ez, ent.*

Imperf. *je dormois, ois, oit : nous dormions, iez, oient.*

Pret. *je dormis, is, it : nous dormimes, ites, irent.*

Fut.

Fut. *je dormirai, ras, ra : nous dormirons, rez, ront.*
 Condit. *je dormirois, rois, roit : nous dormirions, riez, roient.*

Subj. *je dorme, es, e : nous dormions, iez, ent.*

Pret. *je dormisse, isses, ôt : nous dormissions, issiez, issent.*

Imper. *dors, qu'il dorme : dormons, dormez, qu'ils dorment.*

To run away, *fuir.*

Participle act. running away, *fuyant.*

Participle pass. run away, *fui.*

Indic. *je suis, uis, uit : vous fuyons, ez, ent.*

Imperf. *je fuyois, ois, oit : nous fuyions, iez, oient.*

Fut. *je fuirai, ras, ra : nous fuirons, rez, ront.*

Condit. *je fuirais, rois, roit : nous fuirions, riez, roient.*

Subj. *je fuye, es, e : nous fuyions, iez, ent.*

Imper. *fuis, qu'il fuye : fuyons, ez, qu'ils fuyent.*

Instead of using the preterites of the indicative and subjunctive, say, *je pris la fuite, je prisse la fuite. I ran away.*

To die, *mourir.*

Participle act. dying, *mourant.*

Participle pass. dead, *mort.*

Indic. *je meurs, eurs, eurt : nous mourons, ez, meurent.*

Imperf. *je mourais, rois, roit : nous mourions, riez, roient.*

Pret. *je mourus, us, ut : nous mourumes, utes, urent.*

Fut. *je mourrai, ras, ra : nous mourrons, rez, ront.*

Condit. *je mourrais, rois, roit : nous mourrions, riez, roient.*

Subj. *je meure, es, e : nous mourions, riez, meurent.*

Pret. *je mourusse, usses, ôt : nous mourussions, ussiez, ussent.*

Imper. *meurs, qu'il meure : mourons, mourez, qu'ils meurent.*

To open, *ouvrir.*

Indic. *j'ouvre, es, e : nous ouvrons, ez, ent.*

Imperf. *j'ouvrais, ois, oit : nous ouvririons, iez, oient.*

Pret. *j'ouvris, is, it : nous ouvrimes, ites, irent.*

Fut. *j'ouvrirai, ras, ra : nous ouvrirons, rez, ront.*

Condit. *j'ouvrirais, rois, roit : nous ouvririons, riez, roient.*

Subj.

Subj. j'ouvre, es, e : nous ouvrons, iez, ouvrent.

Pret. j'ouvriffe, isses, it : nous ouvrissions, issiez, issent.

Imper. ouvre, qu'il ouvre : ouvrons, ouvrez, qu'ils ouvrent.

Couvrir, souffrir, offrir, découvrir, recouvrir, are conjugated like ouvrir.

To invest, revêtir.

Participle act. revêtant.—Participle pass. revêtu.

Indic. je revêts, ets, et : nous revêtons, ez, ent.

Imperf. je revêtois, ois, oit : nous revêtions, iez, oient.

Pret. je revêtis, is, it : nous revêtîmes, ites, irent.

Fut. je revêtirai, ras ra : nous revêtirons, rez, ront.

Condit. je revêtirois, rois, roit : nous revetirions, riez, roient.

Subj. je revête, es, e : nous revêtions, iez, ent.

Pret. je revêtisse, isses, it : nous revêtissions, issiez, issent.

Imper. revêts, qu'il revête : revetons, revetez, qu'ils revetent.

To sit down, s'asseoir.

Indic. je m'assieds, ieds, ied : nous nous asseyons, eyez, eyent.

Imperf. je m'asséyois, ois, oit : nous nous asseyions, iez, oient.

Pret. je m'assis, is, it : nous nous assîmes, ites, irent.

Fut. je m'assiérai, ras, ra : nous nous assiérons, rez, ront.

Condit. je m'assiérais, rois, roit : nous nous assiériers, riez, roient.

Subj. je m'assye, eyes, eye : nous nous asseyions, iez, ent.

Pret. je m'assisse, isses, it : nous nous assissions, issiez, issent.

Imper. assieds toi, qu'ils' assye : asseyons nous, asseyez vous, qu'ils s' assyent.

To be able, pouvoir.

Participle act. pouvant.—Participle pass. pu.

Indic. je puis, eus, eut : nous pouvons, ez, peuvent.

Imperf. je pouvois, ois, oit : nous pouvions, iez, oient.

Pret. je pus, us, ut : nous pumes, utes, urent.

Fut. je pourai, ras, ra : nous pourons, rez, ront.

E

Condit.

Condit. *je pourrais, rois, roit : nous pourrions, riez, roient.*

Subj. *je puisse, es, e : nous puissions, iez, ent.*

Pret. *je pusse, usses,ût : nous puissions, ussiez, ussent.*

To be worth, *valoir.*

Participle act. *valant.*—Participle pass. *valu.*

Indic. I am worth, *je vaux, aux, aut : nous valons, ez, ent.*

Imperf. I was worth, *je valois, ois, oit : nous valions, iez, oient.*

Pret. I was worth, *je valus, us, ut : nous valumes, utes, urent.*

Fut. *je vaudrai, dras, dra : nous vaudrons, rez, ront.*

Condit. *je vaudrais, rois, roit : nous vaudrions, iez, oient.*

Subj. *je vaille, es, e : nous valions, iez, ent.*

Pret. *je valusse, usses,ût : nous valussons, ussiez, ussent.*

Imper. *vaux, qu'il vaille : valons, valez, qu'ils valient.*

To see, *voir.*

Participle act. *voyant.*—Participle pass. *vu.*

Indic. *je vois, ois, oit : nous voyons, ez, voient.*

Imperf. *je voyois, ois, oit : nous voyions, iez, oient.*

Pret. *je vis, is, it : nous vimes, ites, irent.*

Fut. *je verrai, ras, ra : nous verrons, rez, ront.*

Condit. *je verrois, rois, roit : nous verrions, riez, ront.*

Subj. *je voie, es, e : nous voyons. iez, ent.*

Pret. *je visse, isses, it : nous vissions, issiez, issent.*

Imper. *vois, qu'il voie : voyons, voyez, qu'ils voyent.*

In like manner are conjugated the derivatives of this verb, and among the rest *prevoir* and *pourvoir*; except that these two last in the future and conditional make *prevoirai, prévoirais, pourvoirai, pourvoirais.*—*Pourvoir* makes in the Preter tenses, *je pourvus, je pourvusse.*

To be willing, *vouloir.*

Participle act. *being willing, voulant.*

Participle pass. *been willing, voulu.*

Indic.

Indic. *je veux, eux, eut : nous voulons, ez, veulent.*

Imperf. *je voulois, ois, oit : nous voulions, iez, oient.*

Pret. *je voulus, us, ut : nous voulumes, utes, urent.*

Fut. *je voudrai, ras, ra : nous voudrons, drez, dront.*

Condit. *je voudrois, rois, roit : nous voudrions, driez, droient.*

Subj. *je veuille, es, e : nous voulions, iez, veuillent.*

Pret. *je voulusse, usses,ût : nous voulussions, ussiez, ussent.*

To move, *mouvoir.*

Participle act. *mouvant.*

Participle pass. *mu.*

Indic. *je meus, eus, eut : nous mouvons, ez, meuvent.*

Imperf. *je mouvois, ois, oit : nous mouvions, iez, oient.*

Fut. *je mourrai, ras, ra : nous mourrons, vrez, vront.*

Condit. *je mourrois, rois, roit : nous mourrions, vriez, vroient.*

Subj. *jē meuve, es, e : nous mouvions, iez, ent.*

Imper. *meus, qu'il meuve : mouvons, vez, vent.*

To know, *savoir.*

Participle act. *sachant.*

Participle pass. *su.*

Indic. *je sais, ais, ait : nous savons, ez, ent.*

Imperf. *je savois, ois, oit : nous savions, iez, oient.*

Pret. *je sus, us, ut : nous, fumes, utes, urent.*

Fut. *je saurai, ras, ra : nous saurons, rez, ront.*

Condit. *je saurois, rois, roit : nous saurions, riez, roient.*

Subj. *je sache, es, e : nous sachions, iez, ent.*

Pret. *je fusse, usses,ût : nous fussions, ussiez, ussent.*

Imper. *sache, qu'il sache, sachons, ez, qu'ils sachent.*

To please, *plaire.*

Participle act. *plaisant.*

Participle pass. *plu.*

Indic. *je plais, ais, ait : nous plaçons, ez, ent.*

Imperf. *je plaisois, ois, oit : nous plaçons, iez, oient.*

Pret. *je plus, us, ut : nous plumes, utes, urent.*

Fut. *je plairai, as, ra : nous plairons, rez, ront.*

Condit. *je plairois, ois, oit ; nous plairions, riez, roient.*

Subj. *je plaise, es, e : nous plaçons, iez, ent.*

Pret. *je plusse, usses,ût : nous plussions, iez, ussent.*

Imper. *Plais, qu'il plaise : plaifons, ez, qu'ils plaifent.*
Taire, deplaire, are conjugated like this verb.

To drink, *boire.*

Participle act. *buvant.*

Participle pass. *bu.*

Indic. *je bois, ois, oit : nous buons, uvez, boivent.*

Imperf. *je buvois, ois, oit : nous buvions, uviez, uvoient.*

Pret. *je bus, us, ut : nous bumes, utes, urent.*

Fut. *je boirai, ras, ra : nous boirons, rez, ront.*

Condit. *je boirois, rois, oit : nous boirions, riez, roient.*

Subj. *je boive, ves, ve : nous buvions, viez, boivent.*

Pret. *je buffe, uffes, ût : nous buffions, uffiez, uffent.*

Imper. *Bois, qu'il boive : buvons, buvez, qu'ils boivent.*

To believe, *croire.*

Participle act. *believing, croiant.*

Participle pass. *believed, cru.*

Indic. *je crois, ois, oit : nous croions, iez, oient.*

Imperf. *je croïois, ois, oit : nous croions, iez, oient.*

Preter. *je crus, us, ut : nous crumes, utes, urent.*

Fut. *je croirai, ras, ra : nous croirons, rez, ront.*

Condit. *je croirois, rois, roit : nous croirions, riez, roient.*

Subj. *je croie, es, e : nous croions, iez, oient.*

Pret. *je crusse, es, ût : nous crussions, uffiez, uffent.*

Imper. *Crois, qu'il croie : croions, iez, qu'ils croient.*

To be born, *naître.*

Participle act. *naissant.*

Participle pass. *né.*

Indic. *je na's, ais, ait : nous naissons, ez, ent.*

Imperf. *je naissois, ois, oit : nous naissons, iez, oient.*

Pret. *je naquis, is, it : nous naquimes, ites, uirent.*

Fut. *je naitrai, ras, ra : nous naitrons, trez, tront.*

Condit. *je naitrois, ois, oit : nous naitrions, triez, troient.*

Subj. *je naisse, es, e : nous naissons, iez, ent.*

Pret. *je naquisse, es, ît : nous naquissions, uiffiez, uiffent.*

To say, *dire.*

Participle act. *disant.*

Participle pass. *dit,*

Indic.

Indic. *je dis, is, it : nous disons, dites, disent.*

Imperf. *je disois, ois, oit : nous disions, iez, oient.*

Pret. *je dis, is, it : nous dimes, ites, irent.*

Fut. *je dirai, ras, ra : nous dirons, rez, ront.*

Condit. *je dirois, rois, roit : nous dirions, riez, roient.*

Subj. *je dise, es, e : nous disions, iez, isent.*

Pret. *je disse, es, it : nous dissions, issiez, issent.*

Imper. *Dis, qu' l dise : disons, dites, qu'ils disent.*

After this manner are conjugated, *contredire, se dedire, médire, maudire, interdire, prédire, confire, redire.*

To read, *lire.*

Participle act. *lisant.*

Participle pass. *lu.*

Indic. *je lis, is, it : nous lisons, ez, ent.*

Imperf. *je lisois, oit, oit : nous lisions, iez, oient.*

Pret. *je lus, us, ut : nous lumes, utes, urent.*

Fut. *je lirai, ras, ra : nous lirons, rez, ront.*

Condit. *je lirois, rois, roit : nous lirions, riez, roient.*

Subj. *je lise, es, e : nous lisions, iez, ent.*

Pret. *je lusse, usses, ût : nous lussions, ussiez, ussent.*

Imper. *Lis, qu'il lise : lisons, lisez, qu'ils lisent.*

Elire, suffire, circoncire, relire, are conjugated in the same manner.

To laugh, *rire.*

Participle act. *riant.*

Participle pass. *ri.*

Indic. *je ris, is, it : nous rions, riez, rient.*

Imperf. *je riois, ois, oit : nous riions, riiez, rioient.*

Pret. *je ris, is, it : nous rimes, ites, irent.*

Fut. *je rirai, ras, ra : nous rirons, rez, ront.*

Condit. *je rirois, rois, roit : nous ririons, riez, roient.*

Subj. *je rie, es, e : nous rions, iez, ent.*

Preter. *je risse, es, ût : nous rissions, ssiez, ssent.*

Imper. *ris, qu'il rie : rions, riez, qu'ils rient.*

To write, *écrire.*

Participle act. *écrivant.*

Participle pass. *écrit.*

Indic. *j'écris, is, it : nous écrivons, vez, écrivent.*

Imperf. *j'écrivois, ois, oit : nous écrivions, viez, voient.*

Pret. *j'écrivis, is, it : nous écrivîmes, ites, irent.*

Fut. j'écrirai, ras, ra : nous écrirons, rez, ront.

Condit. j'écrirois, rois, roit : nous écririons, riez, roient.

Subj. j'écrive, es, e : nous écrivions, viez, vent.

Pret. j'écrivisse, isses, ît : nous écrivissions, issiez, issent.

Imper. écris, qu'il écrive : écrivons, vez, qu'ils écrivent.

After this manner are conjugated, transcrire, souscrire, proscrire, inscrire, décrire, prescrire.

To live, vivre.

Participle act. vivant.

Participle pass. vecu.

Indic. je vis, vis, vit : nous vivons, ez, ent.

Imperf. je vivois, ois, oit : nous vivions, iez, oient.

Pret. je vécu, us, ut : nous vécumes, utes, urent.

Fut. je vivrai, ras, ra : nous vivrons, vrez, vront.

Condit. je vivrais, rois, roit : nous vivrions, vriez, vroient.

Subj. je vive, es, e : nous vivions, viez, vent.

Pret. je vécusse, usses, ût : nous vécussions, ussiez, ussent.

Imper. vis, qu'il vive : vivons, vivez, qu'ils vivent.

Revivre, survivre, are its derivatives.

To follow, suivre.

Participle act. suivant.

Participle pass. suivi.

Indic. je suis, uis, uit : nous suivons, ez, ent.

Imperf. je suivais, ois, oit : nous suivions, iez, oient.

Pret. je suivis, is, it : nous suivîmes, îtes, irent.

Fut. je suivrai, vras, vra : nous suivrons, vrez, vront.

Condit. je suivrais, vrais, vroit : nous suivrions, vriez, vroient.

Subj. je suive, es, e : nous suivions, viez, vent.

Pret. je suivisse, isses, ît : nous suivissions, issiez, issent.

Imper. suis, qu'il suive : suivons, suivez, qu'ils suivent.

poursuivre, s'ensuivre, frire.

To take, prendre.

Participle act. prenant.—Participle pass. pris.

Indic. je prends, ends, end : nous prenons, ez, ent.

Imperf. je prenois, ois, oit : nous prenions, iez, oient.

Pret. je pris, is, it : nous primes, îtes, irent.

Fut. je prendrai, ras, ra : nous prendrons, rez, ront.

Condit.

Condit. *je prendrois, rois, roit : nous prendrions, riez, roient.*

Subj. *je prenne, es, e : nous prenions, iez, ent.*

Pret. *je prisse, isses, it : nous prissions, issiez, issent.*

Imper. *prends, qu'il prenne : prenons, prenez, qu'ils prennent.*

Apprendre, comprendre, entreprendre, se méprendre, reprendre, surprendre, are its derivatives.

To break, rompre.

Participle act. rompart.

Participle pass. rompu.

Indic. *je romps, omps, ompt : nous rompons, ez, ent.*

Imperf. *je rompois, ois, oit : nous rompons, iez, oient.*

Pret. *je rompis, is, it : nous rompimes, ites, irent.*

Fut. *je romprai, ras, ra : nous romprons, rez, romt.*

Condit. *je romprois, rois, roit : nous romprions, riez, roient.*

Subj. *je rompe, es, e : nous rompons, iez, ent.*

Pret. *je rompisse, isses, it : nous rompissions, issiez, issent.*

Imper. *romps, qu'il rompe : rompons, pez, qu'ils rompent.*

Corrompre, interrompre, are its derivatives.

To beat, battre.

Participle act. battant.

Participle pass. battu.

Indic. *je bats, ats, at : nous battons, ez, ent.*

Imperf. *je battois, ois, oit : nous battions, iez, oient.*

Pret. *je battis, is, it : nous battimes, ites, irent.*

Fut. *je battrai, ras, ra : nous battons, trez, tront.*

Condit. *je battrais, rois, roit : nous battrions, triez, troient.*

Subj. *je batte, es, e : nous battions, iez, ent.*

Preter. *je battisse, isses, it : nous battissions, issiez, issent.*

Imper. *bats, qu'il batte : battons, battez, qu'ils battent.*

Abattre, débattre, combattre, s'ebattre, rabattre, rebattre, are its derivatives.

To put, mettre.

Participle act. mettent.

Participle pass. mis.

Indic.

Indic. je mets, ets, et : nous mettons, ez, ent.

Imperf. je mettois, ois, oit : nous mettions, iez, oient.

Pret. je mis, is, it : nous mimes, ites, irent.

Fut. je mettrai, ras, ra : nous mettrons, rez, ront.

Condit. je mettrois, ois, oit : nous mettrions, iriez, troient.

Subj. je mette, es, e : nous mettions, iez, ent.

Pret. je misse, isses, it : nous missions, iez, issent.

Imper. mets, qu'il mette : mettons, êtez, qu'ils mettent.

All the derivatives of this verb are conjugated like it.

To conclude, conclure.

Participle act. concluant.

Participle pass. conclu.

Indic. je conclus, us, ut : nous concluons, ez, ent.

Imperf. je conclusois, ois, oit : nous concluions, iez, conclusoient.

Pret. je conclus, us, ut : nous conclumes, utes, urent.

Fut. je conclurai, ras, ra : nous conclurons, rez, ront.

Condit. je conclurois, rois, roit : nous conclurions, riez, roient.

Subj. je conclue, es, e : nous concluions, iez, ent.

Pret. je conclusse, usses,ût : nous conclusions, ussiez, ussent.

Exclure.

To convince, convaincre.

Participle act. convainquant.

Participle pass. convaincu.

Indic. je convaincs, aincs, aint : nous convainquons, ez, ent.

Imperf. je convainquois, ois, oit : nous convainquions, iez, oient.

Pret. je convainquis, is, it : nous convainquîmes, ites, irent.

Fut. je convaincrAI, ras, ra : nous convaincrons, rez, ront.

Condit. je convaincrois, rois, roit : nous convaincussions, riez, roient.

Subj. je convainque, ues, ue : nous convainquions, iez, ent.

Preter.

Preter. je convainquisse, quissés, quît : nous convainquissions, iez, issent.

Imper. Convaincs, quil convainque : convainquons, ez, qu'ils ent.

Vaincre, is conjugated like it.

To sew, caudre.

Participle act. cousant.

Participle pass. cousu.

Indic. je couds, ouds, oud : nous cousons, ez, ent.

Imperf. je cousois, ois, oit : nous cousions, iez, aient.

Pret. je cousis, is, it : nous cousîmes, ites, irent.

Fut. je coudrai, ras, ra : nous coudrons, rez, ront.

Condit. je coudrois, rois, roit : nous coudrions, riez, roient.

Subj. je couse, es, e : nous cousions, iez, ent.

Pret. je coufisse, issés, ît : nous coufissions, issiez, issent.

Imper. couds, qu'il couse : cousons, cousez, qu'ils coufent.

To grind, moudre.

Participle act. moulant.

Participle pass. moulu.

Indic. je mouds, ouds, oud : nous moulons, ez, ent.

Imperf. je moulois, ois, oit : nous moulions, iez, oient.

Preter. je moulus, us, ut : nous moulumes, utes, urent.

Fut. je moudrai, ras, ra : nous moudrons, rez, ront.

Condit. je moudrois, ois, oit : nous moudrions, riez, roient.

Subj. je moule, es, e : nous moulions, iez, ent.

Pret. je moulusse, usses, ût : nous moulussions, iez, ent.

Imper. mouds, qu'il moule : moulons, ez, qu'ils moulent.

To resolve, résoudre.

Participle act. résolvant.

Participle pass. résolu.

Indic. je résous, ous, out : nous résolvons, ez, ent.

Imperf. je résolvois, ois, oit : nous résolvions, iez, oient.

Pret. je résolus, us, ut : nous résolûmes, utes, urent.

Fut. je résoudrai, ras, ra : nous résoudrons, rez, ront.

Condit. je résoudrois, rois, roit : nous résoudrions, riez, roient.

Subj. je résolve, es, e : nous résolvions, iez, ent.

Pret.

- Pret. *je résolusse, usses, ait : nous résolutions, ussiez, ussent.*

Imper. *résous, qu'il resolve : resolvons, ex, qu'ils résolvent.*

Soudre, absoudre, dissoudre, are conjugated like it.

VERBS IMPERSONAL.

There is, *il y a*. There was, *il y avoit*, or *il y eut*. There shall be, *il y aura*. There should be, *il y aurait*. There to be, *y avoir*. There being, *y ayant*. There has been, *il y a eu*. It must, *il faut*. It will be necessary, *il faudra*. It was necessary, *il falloit*, or *il fallut*. It would be needful, *il faudrait*. It has been necessary, *il a fallu*. It shall be necessary, *il faudra*, &c. It may be necessary, *qu'il faille*. It might be requisite, *il fallût*.

When any tense of the verb, *to be*, comes before a participle active, it is not expressed in French; the participle is then put in the same tense of its verb and in the same person that *to be* is. As I am going, or I go, *je vais*. I was eating, or did eat, *je mangeais*. I have been travelling, or I have travelled, *j'ai voyagé*.

EXERCISES.

I am dancing. Thou art doing. He is coming. We are reading. Ye are smelling. They are owing. I was learning. Thou wast walking. He was drinking. We were laughing. Ye were speaking. They were playing. We shall be playing. They will be painting. We may be talking. Ye might be reading. You would be talking. I had been shewing. He had been reading. They might have been playing. Ye may have been drinking.

EXERCISES UPON NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

The father. The sister. The soul. The man. The bird. The soldiers. The houses. The birds. The men. The sisters. Of the bread. Of the soul. Of the house. To the winter. To the daughter. To the father. To the soul. Of the fathers. Of the mothers.

mothers. Of the images. Of the hedges. To the horses. To the letters. To the histories. To London. To Paris. To Cæsar. To Pompey. The master of the house was coming. I had been reading the laws of God. Ye are writing the history of the wars of Philip. They had sent a letter to the queen, and to the princefs.

The merchants of the city of London have presented a petition to the king. We adored the creator of heaven and earth. We wrote to Mr. Campbell a letter. They were speaking of Geneva. They sent to Rome the flowers of the garden. A horse was going to war; he met an afs who was groaning under the weight. A cock was scraping upon a dunghill; he found a jewel. A wolf perceiving a lamb, who was drinking, ran to him. He got upon the horns of the goat, and jumpt out of the well. A fisherman having caught a little fish. The cow, the she-goat, and the sheep, went into partnership with the lion; they took a stag; the lion divided the prey; he gave to the sheep, and to the goat. The glory and honour of the nation.

Thou h it is impossible to give sure rules about the genders of nouns in French, because every thing is *he* or *she* in that language, yet I think the following will not be amifs.

All substantatives ending as follows are generally feminine.

Aie, eure, ise, ion, zon.

Aille, aine, isse, ue, une.

Ace, ence, ée, ouque.

Assé, ense, ique, oure.

Anse, ie, ine, tié.

Eille, ie, ière, té.

Elle, ille, ire, oire.

Ure, euille, oie, son.

CH A P. I. UPON A R T I C L E S.

R U L E I.

A, or *An*, is never expressed in French before the en-
minative, and accusative, in the following cases.

1st. When it comes after proper names of persons, or
a noun denoting a person : unless it is preceded by the
verb *to be*, and followed by *who*, *whom*, *that*, a *genitive**,
or an *adjective* in the positive degree ; but if it is in the
comparative, it must not be expressed.

Mr. Lee, a banker in the Strand.

Mr. Lee, Banquier dans le Strand.

Voltaire is a Frenchman.

Voltaire est Français.

His father is a sailor.

Son pere est matelot.

Lewis, Prince of Baden, a famous General.

Louis, Prince de Bade, General fameux.

The mother is a millener.

La mere est coeseuse.

Nero was a wicked Prince.

Neron etoit un mechant Prince.

Newton was a greater mathematician than Descartes.

Newton etoit plus grand mathematicien que Descartes.

His father is a pattern of virtue.

Son pere est un modele de vertu.

Marlborough was a General, who always took his
measures so well, that he was never beat.

*Marlborough etoit un General, qui prenoit toujours si bien
ses mesures, qu'il n'a jamais été battu.*

Her uncle is a member of the house of commons.

Son oncle est membre de la chambre des communes.

2. After the verb *to be*, preceded by a pronoun personal.
But if the pronoun is made by *ce* in French, which
happens very often, *a* or *an* must then be expressed, as

* But, when the noun coming before the genitive qualifies the
foregoing noun, the article is not expressed.

I am a physician—*Je suis médecin.*

He was a captain of horse—*Il étoit capitaine de cavalerie.*

He is as experienced a soldier, as a cunning statesman—*Il est aussi habile capitaine, que rusé politique.*

He is a pattern of probity—*C'est un modèle de probité.*

3. After names of kingdoms, countries, counties, cities, provinces, places, ships. But if they are accompanied with the verb *to be*, *a* or *an* must be expressed, as

Macoco, a kingdom of Africa.

Macoco, royaume d'Afrique.

Babylon, a city of Chaldea—*Babilone ville de Caldeé.*

The Barfleur, a ninety gun ship.

Le Barfleur vaisseau de quatre vingt dix pieces de canon.

He entered Silesia, a province belonging to the house of Austria.

Il entra en Silesie, province qui appartient à la maison d'Autriche.

Macoco is a kingdom of Africa.

Macoco est un royaume d'Afrique.

Babylon was a city of Chaldea.

Babilone étoit une ville de Caldeé.

The Barfleur is a ninety gun ship—*Le Barfleur est un vaisseau de quatre vingt dix pieces de canon.*

4. Before nouns of number—In the title of a performance—In exclamations; and after *in*, *into*, when they are rendered by *en*, as

He killed a thousand of them—*Il en tua mille.*

A treatise on diseases—*Traité sur les maladies.*

What a genius!—*Quel génie!*

Jupiter turned her into a snake.

Jupiter la changea en serpent.

5. In the beginning of a second and third part of a sentence, when it relates to the first; as

Baron Goerts, after the death of Charles, was condemned by the senate of Stockholm to be beheaded: an instance of revenge rather than justice; and a cruel affront to the memory of a king whom Sweden yet admires:

Le Baron de Goerts, après la mort de Charles, fut condamné par le sénat de Stockholm à avoir la tête tranchée;

exemple de vengeance plutot que de justice ; et affront cruel à la mémoire d'un roi que la Swéde admire encore.

An instance, and a cruel affront, relate to the beheading of Baron Goerts.

6. After the verbs to become, *devenir* ; To pass for, *passer pour* ; To turn, *se faire*, or *devenir* ; To be esteemed, to be reckoned, taken for, or looked upon, to surrender. But if the noun is followed by who, whom, or that, a genitive, or an adjective in the positive degree, it must be expressed ; but if the adjective is in the comparative degree, it is then left out ; as

He passes for a Scotchman—*Il passe pour Ecoffois.*

Mr. Laval turned a protestant.

Mr. Laval se fit protestant.

The Prince of Hesse was looked upon as a good General.

Le Prince de Hesse étoit regardé comme un bon General.

The Duke of Marlborough is reckoned a greater Commander than King William—*Le Duc de Marlborough passe pour plus grand Capitaine que le Roi Guillaume.*

He passes for a man who has more money than wit.

On le regarde comme un homme qui a plus d'argent que d'esprit.

7. Before a noun of title, dignity, office, business, relating to a noun or pronoun preceded by a verb denoting creating, appointing, making, electing, choosing, declaring, proclaiming, saluting ; as

The King made him a Knight of the Garter.

Le Roi le fit Chevalier de la Jarretière.

The Duke of York having declared himself a Roman Catholic—*Le Duc de York s'étant déclaré Catholique.*

In other cases, *a*, or *an*, are generally expressed ; they are often understood in English, but they must be expressed in French, except when they fall under the above rule.

RULE II.

After the verbs to buy, to sell, to cost, to give for, to be worth, *a*, or *an*, is rendered by *le*, *la*, *l'*, before the

the noun of weight, measure, or the thing bought, or to be bought or sold.

A, or *an*, in the sense of *each*, *every*,—*per*, is rendered by *par* ; as

He gets a guinea a week.

Il gagne une guinée par semaine.

We paid a shilling a mile.

Nous payames un chelin par mille.

He has twenty pounds a year—*Il a vingt pièces par an.*

He sells cyder at a shilling a bottle.

Il vend le cidre un chelin la Boutaille.

Oysters are worth a penny a piece.

Les huitres valent un sou la pièce.

That cloth costs a guinea a yard.

Ce drap coute une guinée la verge.

RULE III.

The is never expressed in French in the following cases :

1. After, or before proper names of persons, except when it serves to distinguish one person from another who goes by the same name, or is added by way of surname, or distinction ; but if it is followed by a superlative, it must be expressed, as

Venus, the Goddess of Love—*Venus, Déesse de l'Amour.*

Harold, the son of Earl Godwin

Harold fils du Comte Godwin.

Faustulus, the King's shepherd, found Remus and Romulus at the foot of a tree—*Faustulus, berger du Roi, trouva Remus & Romulus aux pieds d'un arbre.*

I mean Mr. Howe, the General, not the Admiral.

Je veux dire Mr. Howe, le General, non pas l'Amiral.

Mr. Harris, the physician, is dead, but Mr. Harris the counsellor, is still alive—*Mr. Harris, le medecin, est mort, mais Mr. Harris l'avocat est encore vivant.*

Charles the Bold, and Peter the Great.

Charles le Hardi, & Pierre le Grand.

Vauban, the best engineer in the world, conducted the siege—*Vauban, le meilleur ingenieur du monde, conduisit le siège.*

Marshal Renchild was called the Parmenio of the Alexander of the north—*On appelloit le Maréchal Renchild le Parmenion de l'Alexandre du nord.*

Margaret of Valdemar, the Semiramis of the north.
Marguerite de Valdemar, la Semiramis du nord.

The King of Prussia is the Cæsar of our age.

Le Roi de Prusse est le César de notre siècle.

2. After names of cities, towns, places; but if they are accompanied with the verb *to be*, or a superlative, *the* must be expressed; as

London, the capital of England.

Londres, capitale d'Angleterre.

Babylon, the residence of the Kings of Assyria.

Babylone résidence des Rois d'Assyrie.

London is the capital of England.

Londres est la capitale d'Angleterre.

Babylon, the best policed city in the world.

Babylone la ville du monde la plus policée.

3. Before comparatives, and the adverbs *more*, *less*; also before nouns ordinal coming after the names of persons. Observe that, in speaking of *kings*, *princes*, or *the day* of the month, the noun ordinal in English must be turned by a cardinal in French, except *first* and *second*; as George the Third and Henry the Seventh; turn thus:

George Three, and Henry Seven.

George Trois, & Henri Sept.

George the First, and Frederick the Second.

George Premier, & Frederic Second.

4. After *in*, or *into*, rendered by *en*; but, if they are rendered by *dans*, *the* must be expressed.

Note, *In*, or *into*, are made by *en* before nouns without an article; as

In France—*En France.*

In time of peace—*En tems de paix.*

In other cases, *the* is commonly expressed.

RULE IV.

Though nouns have no article before them in English, they require *le*, *la*, *l'*, *les*, before the nominative and accusative in French, according to the number and gender of

of the noun, except in a few cases hereafter mentioned.
France, England, and Spain have made peace.

La France, l'Angleterre, & l'Espagne ont fait la paix.

Gold, silver, fame, honours, and dignities, are uncertain and perishable—*L'or, l'argent, la renommée, les honneurs, & les dignités sont des choses incertaines & périssables.*

I love wine, cyder, and beer.

J'aime le vin, le cidre, & la bière.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Before names of persons, cities, villages, towns, places, months, and the days of the week, the article is not expressed; as

Cæsar conquered Pompey—*César vainquit Pompée.*

London and Paris are very populous.

Londres & Paris sont fort peuplés.

Come on Thursday—*Venez Jeudi.*

2. After the following words, *some*, (whether expressed or understood) *many*, *several*, *in*, *into*, rendered by *en*. Also after adverbs of quantity (see the 8th Rule) and after nouns of number, all sorts of pronouns, and the following words, *with*, *nor*, *neither*, *by*, *out of*, *through*, *without*; but if these last words come before nouns of countries, or nouns with an article, *le*, *la*, *l'*, *les*, must be expressed.

She has many children—*Elle a plusieurs enfants.*

I had twenty guineas—*J'avois vingt guinées.*

She has neither money nor friends.

Elle n'a ni argent ni amis.

We retired with glory and without loss.

Nous nous retirâmes avec gloire & sans perte.

They made peace with France.

Il firent la paix avec la France.

Without the assistance of his friends.

Sans l'assistance de ses amis.

3. Before nouns that serve only to qualify the foregoing noun or pronoun; that is, to shew what that noun or pronoun is or was, or what it is not. Also when the article *a*, or *an*, is understood before the noun or pronoun. There are also a great many nouns that take no article after certain verbs. (See Chap. XLX.)

Men are sinners—*Les hommes sont pécheurs.*

George the Third, King of England.

George Trois, Roi d'Angleterre.

Mr. Pitt was not then Secretary of State.

Mr. Pitt n'étoit pas alors secrétaire d'état.

My lord Stairs, brother-in-law to my lord B——e.

Milord Stairs, beaufrere de milord B——e.

Mr. Crawford, General of Horse.

Mr. Crawford, General de Cavalerie.

Sinners, King, shew what the foregoing noun is, and
 a is understood before *Secretary, General*.

RULE V.

When the word *some* is expressed, or can be put before a noun in the sense of *part, bit, piece*; that is, when the noun does not express any number or quantity, nor implies a totality or the whole species of what is mentioned, that noun must be put in the genitive in French; except when it comes with an adjective (which is to be placed before the substantive in French), for then we must only put *de* before the adjective.

Give me some bread—*Donnez moi du pain.*

Give me some good bread—*Donnez moi de bon pain.*

I saw women and men dancing.

Je vis des femmes & des hommes qui dansoient.

I have seen handsome women in England.

J'ai vu de belles femmes en Angleterre.

I had pears and oranges.

J'avois des poires & des oranges.

RULE VI.

The genitive is often made in English by adding an *s* to the substantive, which is then placed before the nominative; but the nominative must come first in French; as—

The King's palace, *i. e.* the palace of the King.

Le palais du Roi.

My father's house—*La maison de mon père.*

Note, Sometimes the nominative and the genitive come together like a compound word without an *s*: in that case, if the genitive will admit *of*, we put *de* in French;

French ; but if it requires *of the* before it to make sense, *du, dela, del'* must be used ; as

Wine-merchant, *i. e.* Merchant of wine.

Marchand de vin.

Barley-sugar (Sugar of barley)—*Sucre d'orge.*

I had a gold watch (a watch of gold.)

J'avois une montre d'or.

A marble-table (A table of marble).

Une table de marbre.

Silk-stockings (Stockings of silk)—*Des bas de soie.*

The street-door (The door of the street).

La porte de la rue.

The parlour-window (The window of the parlour).

La fenêtre de la salle.

Obs. If the first noun denotes country, it must be rendered by a substantive in French, though it is an adjective in English ; as

Spanish wool (Wool of Spain)—*La laine d'Espagne.*

English cloth (Cloth of England)—*Le drap d'Angleterre.*

The French Ambassador (The Ambassador of France).

L'Ambassadeur de France.

Sometimes the first noun will admit neither *of*, nor *of the*. This happens when it denotes the *form*, the *use*, or *manner of being*, of the thing spoken of : *à* must then be used instead of *du, dela, del'*. A wind-mill (we could not say a mill of wind)—*Un moulin à vent.*

Fire-arms—*Armes à feu.*

Gun-powder—*Poudre à canon.*

Dining-room—*Salle à manger.*

Diamond-ring—*Bague à diamands.*

RULE VII.

Of, from, not followed by *a, an, the*, are rendered as follows : by *de*, instead of *du, dela, del', des*, in the following cases :

1. Before *pronouns*, names of *persons, cities, towns, places, months, days*, and after words denoting *want, scarcity, sort, kind* ; as

The courage of Alexander and Cæsar.

Le Courage d'Alexandre & de César.

The month of May—*Le mois de Mai.*

We were speaking of my father and of your sisters.

Nous parlions de mon père & de vos sœurs.

That kind of apples—*Cette sorte de pommes.*

For want of money—*Faute d'argent.*

The citizens of Paris—*Les bourgeois de Paris.*

2. Before nouns of number, and names of kingdoms, countries, provinces, counties, places; coming after a noun of title, dignity, employ, office; or after words denoting arriving, bringing, expecting, coming, expelling, driving, going out, returning, recalling, receiving, sending, setting out, writing; and after the words county, city, court, crown, coasts, duchy, earldom, empire, history, family or house, kingdom, principality, revolution, parliament, throne.

The King of England, France, and Ireland.

Le Roi d'Angleterre, de France, & d'Irlande.

The Ambassadors of England and Holland.

Les Ambassadeurs d'Angleterre & de Hollande.

I brought it from Germany—*Je l'ai apporté d'Allemagne.*

They returned from France—*Ils revinrent de France.*

He expects a letter from Italy.

Il attend une lettre d'Italie.

He laid waste Normandy, a province of France.

Il ravagea la Normandie, province de France.

In the course of twenty years.

Dans le cours de vingt ans.

The cities of Ægypt are large and populous.

Les villes d'Egypte sont grandes & bien peuplées.

3. After nouns having *a*, or *an*, before them:

I bought a hoghead of wine.

J'achetai une barrique de vin.

He is a prodigy of courage and policy.

C'est un prodige de courage & de politique.

A dish of asparagus—*Un plat d'aspérges.*

She has a cabinet of medals.

Elle a un cabinet de médailles.

4. When the noun coming after *of*, qualifies or characterises the foregoing noun; that is, when it shews what it is, the matter it is made of, or what it contains.

This rule depends entirely upon judgment. Many find it difficult to distinguish when the second noun qualifies the first, or when it does not. For the sake of such learners I will make the following observation.

Obs. When the first noun is preceded by *a*, or *an*, the second generally qualifies it (see the 3d case). When the first noun is preceded by *the*, or if it has no article before it, the second generally qualifies it, if it signifies only an indeterminate *part*, *quantity*, or *quality*, of the thing spoken of; but if it means the *whole*, or the whole species of what is mentioned, then it does not qualify it; therefore *of* must be rendered by the genitive, except when it falls under the second case.

The above observation may have some exceptions; but, in general, it will hold good. *Of* and *from* are also rendered by *de*, after some adjectives. (See them, Chap. II.)

Cromwell had taken the name of Protector, and not that of King—*Cromwell avait pris le nom de Protécteur, & non celui de Roi.*

He formed himself upon those patterns of virtue and probity—*Il se forma sur ces modèles de vertu & de probité.*

He has sold the cabinet of medals which his father had left him—*Il a vendu le cabinet de médailles que son père lui avait laissé.*

I saw a man of war—*J'ai vu un vaisseau de guerre.*

Protector shews what the name was; *of virtue*, shews what the patterns were; therefore the first noun is qualified by the second. But, in the following examples, the second noun signifies a totality, or the whole of what is spoken of; therefore *of* must be made by the genitive.

The Creator of heaven and earth is the God of Christians—*La Créateur du ciel & de la terre est le Dieu des Chrétiens.*

The clemency of Princes is often but policy.

La Clemence des Princes n'est souvent qu'une politique.

Italy is the garden of Europe.

L'Italie est le jardin de l'Europe.

The price of bread and meat is exorbitant.

Le prix du pain & de la viande est exorbitant.

The king of animals would not disgrace himself by killing him—*Le roi des animaux ne voulut pas se deshonorier en le tuant.*

The fear of death, and the love of life, are natural to men—*La crainte de la mort, & l'amour de la vie, sont naturels aux hommes.*

RULE VIII.

De must be put in French before participles or adjectives coming after *ceque*, what—*quelqu'un*, somebody—*personne*, nobody—*rien*, nothing—*quelque chose*, something. The following words also require *de* before the next noun, if it has no article; but if it has one, the noun must be put in the genitive: *Abondance, autant, assez, beaucoup, combien, d'avantage, jamais, guères, moins, peu, plus, point, tant, trop, nombre*. Also after the verb, *to grow*, *de* must be put before a noun of measure.

What I find ridiculous in it.

Ceque j'y trouve de ridicule.

He has as many guineas as shillings.

Il a autant de guinées que de chelings.

I saw nobody killed or wounded.

Je n'ai vu personne de tué ou de bléssé.

I see nothing remarkable in it.

Je n'y vois rien de remarquable.

He has more friends than his brother.

Il a plus d'amis que son frère.

They grew nine inches every month.

Ils croissoient de neuf pouces tous les mois.

EXERCISES UPON ARTICLES.

(See RULE I.)

Locke was an Englishman. Mr. Hord is an ensign in a regiment. The father is a merchant. Locke was a great philosopher. The father is a rich merchant. The son was a lawyer, but now he is a school-master. Villars was then a General. Villars was a General who retrieved the affairs of the kingdom. Mr. Handel is a greater

a greater musician than Mr. Smith. Solomon was a wife King. He is an honest man. She is a milliner. He killed an Englishman. Condé, a Prince of the blood, attacked the enemy. Carthage, a city in Africa. London, a city of a great trade. London is a city of great trade. Geneva is a republic. There were a thousand foot against an hundred horse. The Royal George, an hundred gun ship, sailed yesterday for Gibraltar. The Ramilies is a fine ship. To secure herself against his resentment, she poisoned herself: an expedient pretty common then. Catinat, a French General, was looked upon as an officer of great merit. My father was a parson, he turned a lawyer, and soon after he was elected an Alderman. He passes for a great orator. He has been created a Duke. He was looked upon as a man who had done great service to the nation. Soon after he was made a Knight. I had an apple and a pear. Mr. Laval, a relation of Mr. Brown, relates.

(See RULE II.)

He sold the fowls for a crown a dozen, and the pigeons for six-pence a-piece. We bought the cloth for ten shillings a yard. Butter is worth fifteen-pence a pound. If I could get ten shillings a day, I would be satisfied; but I hardly get ten shillings a week. My brother has a thousand pounds a year. We paid half a crown a head for our breakfast. I pay a guinea a month. Mr. Lee is a physician. Voltaire is a great poet. I was then a captain.

(See RULE III.)

Jupiter and Pluto, the sons of the god Saturn. Margaret Valdemar, the Semiramis of the north. Mr. Wallis, the physician, is dead, but his brother, the parson, is alive. Alexander the Great. Frederic surnamed the wise. Aristides, the just, was an Athenian. Rome, the residence of the Popes. I saw Lewis the Fourteenth, called Lewis the Great. George the First and Second. George the Third is a good Prince. I arrived the fifth of the last month. Rome is the residence of the Popes.

Paris,

Paris, the capital of the kingdom, was besieged. Mr. Parker, the attorney, is turned a preacher. I admired the Brutus who conspired against Cæsar. I was in the room. Henry the Fourth was a great Prince. The more he gets, the more he spends. The richer he grows, the poorer he is.

(See RULE IV.)

Love, hatred, pride, avarice, corrupt men. Geneva is a city between France and Italy. Cæsar was murdered by Brutus and Cassius. I had five guineas and three half crowns. Come on Monday or Tuesday. She speaks without reason. Impudence is a disgrace. He has neither friends nor foes. He killed my brother out of jealousy. He was made Captain. When I was in Italy and in Spain, I was taken for a spy. Mr. Vendome, General of the French, took Madrid the capital of the kingdom. He keeps many horses and dogs. I have two boys and three girls. He speaks with authority. She loves money. My father wrote to General Conway, master of the ordnance, and to Mr. Sharpe, grocer, in the Strand. They came before dinner. Time will come. If I did love wine, beer, cheese, and butter. If servants were masters. They are liars. Love virtue, and detest vice. Parnassus and Helicon were two mountains. England is a fine kingdom. The soldiers being masters of the city, ran to plunder,

(See RULES V. and VI.)

They had friends and foes. She knows people who drink brandy, rum, and beer, before dinner. We sell good cheese. Give some apples to your sister. They bought parrots, apes, and other animals. The King's palace, and the Queen's gardens. He came in by the parlour-window, and went out by the kitchen-door. I bought a silver watch and cotton stockings. He loves English beer and French wines. We sell Dutch quills for two shillings a dozen. Mr. Brown was a stay-maker, but now he is a cyder-merchant. They sold deer-skins,
powder-

powder-boxes, coffee-mills, and glass-candlesticks. The King made presents to the Generals. Gamesters are thieves who rob unpunished. English cloth is very fine. The English ambassador presented a memorial. My lord Stairs, the King's ambassador, made remonstrances to the Court of France.

(See RULES VII. and VIII.)

Alexander, the son of Philip, King of Macedon. The riches of the city of London. My father's house and my uncle's gardens. In the month of September, I have in my garden a sort of pears. James the Second was driven from the thrones of England, Scotland, and Ireland. The empire of Germany. He reads the History of England, Spain, and France. Philip the Fourth, King of Spain. As the King was returning from Germany with the Duke of Portland. They set out from Essex the seventh of October. He received the parcel of letters. They sent for oranges from Spain. He expects his father to-morrow from France. We drank a glass of wine and water. Jealousy is a mixture of love and hatred. I love a man of sense. Cæsar was a man of courage and prudence. The French were driven from Italy and Germany. He arrived yesterday from Vienna, the capital of Germany. They brought flour and wheat from America. Having examined the nature of animals. He published a collection of sentences and witticisms. He had a great many friends. What I find surprizing. The wear of lace and cambrick is very common. He has too much impudence. That country has mines of gold, silver, diamonds, and rubies. The Queen of Hungary had the assistance of England, Holland, and the King of Sardinia. How many children has your brother? I have eat something good. The Cardinal of Richlieu humbled the house of Austria. He was a member of the house of Peers. If you was a man of honour. The King of that country. The fate of men. There is in several counties of England a sort of plant. They have the shadow of virtues. They took many pieces of cannon. He has wrote the

G

History

History of Europe. He had an army of fifty thousand men. The love of independency, and the spirit of party, which reigned then. We were drove upon the coasts of England. Athens was then the center of taste, wit, and learning. The hatred of vice, and the love of virtue. I bought eighteen yards of ribbon. There were an hundred gates of brass. Mr. Fagel, a man of rare merit, told the Duke of Marlborough. They proposed several forms of government. He had begun the revolution of England. The price of provisions was so exorbitant. I ride twice a week. The Queen of England, widow of Charles the First, was then in France.

GENERAL EXERCISES.

When Alexander the Great returned from the East. The Ambassadors of the Carthaginians and of other cities of Africa, Sardinia, Spain, and Sicily, went to Babylon, the seat of the Kings of Assyria. I saw in the King's gardens, gold statues, brass columns, pictures, marble-tables, and fine fish ponds. Alexander having taken Dionides, a famous pirate. Remus and Romulus, who were the founders of Rome, were the sons of Rhea Sylvia and Mars. Charles the Twelfth was a virtuous Prince, but, like other men, he had failings. The love of honour incites men to noble actions. The two Generals divided Asia and Ægypt. A little before Nero's death, Vindex, Governor of the Gauls, rebelled. I sent hares and partridges to Mr. Martin, a Banker, in Lombard-street. The great Condé, a Prince of the blood, performed wonders in Flanders; he defeated the Spaniards under the command of General Mercy, a brave and experienced General. George the Third, King of England, France, and Ireland, is arrived from Hanover. Mr. Hoar, the physician, is nephew to Mr. Hoar, the school-master. Mr. Lewis is a parson, and his son, an apothecary. When I came from Rome, I passed through Switzerland and France. Addison was Secretary of State. There is something surprizing in the History of the Duke of Guise. He had more courage, and less prudence. They sent bread, meat, cheese, and good clothes, to poor people. The Earl of Stair was a Scotchman, and was esteemed a good General.

Pluto,

Pluto, Jupiter's brother, carried off Proserpina, daughter of Ceres, the Goddess of Harvest, as she was gathering flowers on Mount Ætna in Sicily. Having taken up arms, they made inroads into the provinces of Normandy and Picardy. Rashness is the property of youth, and prudence of old age. They brought the golden fleece from Colchis. The iron and brass cannon were taken. God invites sinners to repentance. When they came on the sea-shore, they perceived the Queen's army. You are a German. She was a milliner. The length of France from Cape St. Vincent. Baron, a famous actor, gave lessons to people of distinction. Trade was then in few hands. The Emperors of Rome did give their daughters in marriage to senators. Soldiers are often reduced to bad bread. He was a sailor. There are a thousand instances of Princesses, who have married plain noblemen.

Intemperance, and a physician, are two great enemies to* life. As they were the King's servants. Virtue procures friendship, but vice produces quarrels and hatred. Lycurgus, a Lacedemonian, was a famous law-giver; he abolished the use of gold and silver, as the source of all manner of evils: he was the brother of Polydeces, and the son of Eunomus, King of Sparta, a city of Greece. Shepherds came in crowds with baskets of flowers, and offered honey, and other things, to the gods. The Duke of Guise, a French nobleman, was killed by the King's order. They sent for Spanish snuff from Madrid. They were made prisoners of war. Paris, the son of Priam, King of Troy, went into Greece, and carried off Helena, the wife of Menelaus. The Greeks marched against Troy, under the conduct of Agamemnon, King of Mycenæ, and Menelaus's brother. The rape of Helena was the cause of the siege of Troy, which lasted ten years. A Frenchman having killed an Englishman, was burnt alive. I am the son of Ulysses, King of Ithaca, replied Telemachus. He had studied philosophy and geography. Malta, the center of the war between the Turks and Christians. He was seated on his ivory throne, holding a golden sceptre. What a noise for nothing! They bought repeating watches for twenty guineas a-piece. I saw the Cyclops, monstrous giants who devour men. He sells silk-stockings and handkerchiefs. The Duke of Grafton, a Knight of the Garter, came yesterday from Essex. He was a Captain, when he was appointed Governor of Jamaica. The power of honesty is so great. The desire of glory,

* To must be made by *de*.

riches, power, and pleasure, is a disease of the mind. John, King of France, was taken prisoner by the Black Prince, the son of Edward the Third, King of England. We are servants. You are the servants of Mr. Hill. They bought brick and wood-houses from Mr. Lewis. The principality of Orange belonged to William the Third, King of England. James the First, King of England, France, and Ireland, is arrived from Scotland. My son is a book-binder.

C H A P. II.

RULES UPON ADJECTIVES.

RULE I.

Adjectives must agree in number and gender with the substantives, and be repeated before every noun ; as

He has a good father and mother.

*Il a un bon pere et une bonne mere.**

RULE II.

When an adjective agrees with two or more substantives of the same gender and number, it must be put in the plural ; as

The mother and daughter are happy.

La mere & la fille sont heureuses.

But if the substantives are of different numbers or genders, the adjective agrees with the last, if it is not preceded by some tense of *to be*.

He has the eyes and mouth open.

Il a les yeux et la bouche ouverte.

If there is any tense of the verb *to be*, between the last noun and the adjective, the adjective must be put in the masculine plural ; as

The father and mother are dead.

Le pere et la mere sont morts.

RULE III.

French adjectives must be placed after their substantive, except the following which are placed before ;

* Participles passive follow the rules of adjectives, having a masculine and feminine.

Brave,

Brave, beau, bon, cher, chétif, grand, vieux, gros, jeune, méchant, mauvais, petit, saint.

RULE IV.

When adjectives of dimension, such as *high, thick, wide, long, &c.* are accompanied with the verb *to be*, *de* is put both before the noun of measure and dimension in French; but, if they are not accompanied with that verb, *de* is put before the noun of dimension only. Observe, that *to be* must be then rendered by *avoir*, and the above adjectives are commonly rendered by their substantives in French; as

A ditch six feet deep, that is, a ditch of six feet of depth—*Un fossé de six pieds de profondeur.*—The ditch is six feet deep; the ditch has six feet of depth—*Le fossé a six pieds de profondeur.*

RULE V.

When a genitive comes after *partie, foule, moitié, multitude, nombre, sorte, espèce, troupe*, the adjective agrees with it, in number and gender.

A part of the castle was burnt.

Une partie du château fut brûlé.

I saw half of the soldiers killed, or taken.

Je vis la moitié des soldats tués ou pris.

EXERCISES UPON ADJECTIVES.

(See RULES I. and III.)

Mr. Morris is an honest man, and Mrs. Morris is an honest woman. The lesson is easy. The box is round. The daughter is pretty. The mother is happy, and the son is always merry. The orange is sweet. The buckles are black, and the garters are white. The house was fine. The beer is good. The cow is fat. He had a sharp quarrel. The girl is come. The room is long. The wife is jealous. The streets are narrow. He has a handsome wife and daughter.

(See RULE II.)

The father and son are dead. The pen and ink are good. Adam and Eve were created innocent. The army was defeated. They had received bad news. Great Generals have committed great faults. The soul is immortal. The window is narrow, but the street-door

is wide. She brought green pease and dry figs. Spire, a famous city in Germany, was taken and plundered. The horse and mare were old. The brother and sister are handsome, but the mother and the aunt are ugly. Ye found the mistress and the maid dead. She had the knees and legs white. The city and the camp were taken. They sell fine silver-buckles. They found the glasses and bottles broke. She was beloved.

(See RULES IV. and V.)

I saw a man seven feet high. The school is thirty feet long and fourteen broad. A part of the wood was lost. They bought a cane three feet and a half long, and three inches round. Half of the house was demolished. A great number of soldiers were taken prisoners. Bats are a kind of nocturnal birds. A crowd of barbarians rushed into the town. Half of the forests were destroyed. Half of the vineyards were frozen. They built a brick wall two miles long, and twenty feet high. The well was fifty fathoms deep. There are walks in the garden two hundred yards long, and thirty broad. The walls of Babylon were built with large bricks; they were fifty cubits thick, and two hundred high. They were defended by one hundred and fifty towers placed at an equal distance. The city was twenty leagues in compass, with an hundred brass-gates, fifty large streets, and as many squares, containing stately palaces, magnificent buildings, and delightful gardens. An unanimous consent among civilized nations, has established in Europe customs called laws of war, customs unknown to other nations. The court of France became less lively and more serious, after the King led a life more retired.

Interest, pleasure, and glory, are the three motives of the actions and conduct of men. Reason and self-love are two irreconcilable enemies. Lewis the Fourteenth made great efforts in Flanders. The maid is industrious. I admire the ingenious thoughts of the author. There is great danger in such enterprises. I love fresh walnuts. The King and the Queen were crowned. He had the arms and legs naked. They brought from Italy many new fashions. The man and the woman were examined. He had the wrists and tongue cut off. Rules ought to be founded upon clear and evident principles. The French and English fleet met the fifteenth of May. The walls of Babylon were two hundred feet high, and seventy-five thick. They have received the agreeable
news

news of a victory gained by the King of Prussia over the Austrians, commanded by Count Daun, a brave and experienced General.

Of the COMPARISON of ADJECTIVES.

RULE I.

The comparative is made in French, by putting the word *plus* before the positive; as wiser, *plus sage*—greater, *plus grand*.

The superlative is made by placing before *plus*, the article of the substantive, if the substantive comes before it.

The greatest King, *le plus grand Roi*.—The most amiable woman, *la plus aimable femme*.—Of the largest cities, *des plus grandes villes*.—To the greatest Princes, *aux plus grands Princes*.—The history of the most famous nations, *l'histoire des plus célèbres nations*.

But if the substantive comes in French before the adjective, as it generally does, *le*, *la*, or *les*, must then be put before *plus*, though the noun is in the genitive or the dative; as, The custom of the most barbarous nations—*La coutume des nations les plus barbares*.

There is only one exception to this rule; and that is, if the noun or adjective has before it, *one*, *a*, or *an*, we must put *des* instead of *le*, *la*, *les*, before *plus*; as, It is a custom of the most barbarous—*C'est une coutume des plus barbares*.—It is one of the most barbarous customs—*C'est une des coutumes des plus barbares*.

RULE II.

When *in* comes after a superlative, it is not expressed in French; but the noun coming after it, is put in the genitive; as, The most learned man in the world—*Le plus savant homme du monde*.

RULE III.

Than, coming after a comparative, or the words *more*, *less*, *better*, is rendered as follows:

By *que de* before an infinitive, and by *que ne* before any other tense: *que* comes before the nominative, and *ne* after it.

It is more easy to spend money than to get it.

Il est plus aisé de dépenser de l'argent que d'en gagner.

He is older than he looks.

Il est plus vieux qu'il ne paroît.

But if the foregoing verb or adjective requires à before the next infinitive, it must be used instead of *de*, and if *to* can be turned by *for to*, *in order to*, *pour* must be used instead of *a*, *de*; as, When we consider that the world is more apt to censure than applaud—*Quand on considère que les hommes sont plus portés à blâmer qu'à applaudir.*

We take less pains to become happy, than to make others believe that we are so—*Nous nous tourmentons moins pour nous rendre heureux que pour faire croire aux autres, que nous le sommes.*

2. By *que* before conjunctions; and when it comes in the same sentence with *no sooner*:

You are happier than if you was married.

Vous êtes plus heureux que si vous étiez marié.

3. By *que* before nouns and pronouns. But if they are followed by a verb in any other tense than the infinitive, it is rendered by *que ne*.

He is taller than my brother.

Il est plus grand que mon frère.

He is taller than my brother says.

Il est plus grand que mon frère ne dit.

She is richer than I—*Elle est plus riche que moi.*

4. By *de* before nouns cardinal.

He got more than ten pounds by it.

Il y gagna plus de dix livres.

5. By *que de* between two substantives, or between *plus*, *moins*, and a substantive without an article.

He has more money than wit.

Il a plus d'argent que d'esprit.

Has he any wit?—*A-t-il de l'esprit?*

Yes, he has more than money.

Oui, il en a plus que d'argent.

RULE IV.

Verbs coming after a superlative, and preceded by *that*, are put in the subjunctive in French; if they are
in

in the present of the indicative in English, or the preterite or their compounds, *that* is then rendered by *qui*, if it stands immediately before the verb without a noun between, and by *que*, if there is one.

The most learned man that is.

Le plus savant homme qui soit.

The best man that I know.

Le meilleur homme que je connoisse.

Explain it in the best manner you can.

Expliquez le mieux que vous puissiez.

That, is often understood in English, but it must be carefully expressed in French; as

The best reason you can give.

La meilleure raison que vous puissiez donner.

E X E R C I S E S.

On the COMPARISON of ADJECTIVES.

(See RULE I. and II.)

A wolf perceived a lamb who was drinking much lower. The lion is the strongest and the most courageous of all animals. Mrs. Lewes was one of the most rational women in Madrid. The Alps are the highest mountains in Europe. I sent finer presents to the most agreeable and amiable lady in London. The right hand is the strongest. My father is richer and older.

Your sister is handsomer, but she is prouder and richer. The shorter the days, the longer are the nights. He had done greater and more important actions. I prefer, says the cock in the fable, a corn of barley to all the precious stones in the world. He was one of the richest men in the kingdom.

(See RULES III. and IV.)

To suffer rather than to die, is the motto of men. He is worse than you think. We are happier than if we lived in town. The King of France is more powerful than the King of Spain. The English are more polite than the French think. The greatest victory that he gained whilst he had the command of the King's armies. The worst that can happen. Woollen manufactures bring into England, a greater and a more sure revenue than the mines of Peru. If you take the least pains you will succeed. He is not taller than he was.

They

They live in a state worse than death. When we arrived to the nearest lake, we saw a multitude of frogs. They are reduced to the last extremity. The dog let go the boar because he had bad teeth. Presents have always corrupted the fidelity of the most disinterested people, and who appeared the most attached to their duty. A frog bolder than the others approached the King. The greatest Generals that ever lived have committed great faults. An hundred of the most distinguished Sabines were made senators. She was the richest heiress in Paris. They were speaking of the most learned and ingenious man in Europe. It is more glorious to conquer than to be conquered. He passes for the most honest man that is.

The Romans were making great preparations against Antiochus, King of Asia Minor, and the most powerful Prince in the East. In the most remote parts of France, there is a kind of plant called zerob. She is prouder and more haughty than if she was the richest and handsomest woman in town. He had done many services to the most ungrateful people, that I know. Asia is a great deal larger than Europe. He should apply to more learned people. He has less money than he says. The best quality that a man can have, is to be civil and obliging to the most uncivil and disobliging people. The best wine is sold for a crown a pint. Mutual benevolence is the greatest bond of human society. The greatest folly you can commit. Lewis the Fourteenth was the greatest politician France ever had. He wrote the history of the most ancient and famous monarchies in Africa. Men are subject to all sorts of infirmities. My father gave more money than I thought. He found the exercise easier than he thought. They have more foes than friends. He has less friendship for the brother than for the sister. He is prouder than when he was in Italy. They aspired to greater honours. The most pernicious of all vices is slander: it is often the ruin of the most honest people, it creates discord among the most intimate friends. Your brother is more diligent, more studious, and takes more pains than you. Religion is the most important subject that can employ the minds of men. Annibal formed the boldest project that ever General had dared to conceive. Cardinal Fleury was one of the most agreeable men in the court of France. The most foolish and ridiculous fashion that he brought from France. The more difficult an enterprise is, the more glorious. The best troops in the world are sometimes conquered.

C H A P. III.

Of the REGIMEN of ADJECTIVES.

RULE I.

Of, with, from, for, at, are rendered by *de*; but but if they are followed by an article, they are rendered in French by the genitive; after the following adjectives, and all those denoting ignorance, desire, care, plenty, forgetting, fullness, emptiness, fear, guilt, want, remembrance.

Aise, accablé, accusé, assuré, avide, abimé, content, capable, comblé, contrit, content, charmé, certain, chargé, couvert, curieux, doué, digne, dangereux, enragé, épuisé, environné, excédé, entourré, enflé, en état, ennuyé, fâché, fatigué, indigne, indigné, incapable, sur le point, incertain, surpris, joyeux, libre, las, lassé, mécontent, mêlé, orné, paré, pourvu, sur, satisfait, redevable, ravi, à la veille, taxé.

The above adjectives require *de* before the next infinitive, as also all those preceded by the impersonal *il est*—it is.

RULE II.

Adjectives signifying advantage, aptness, disadvantage, due, difficulty, displeasure, fitness, likeness, profit, pleasure, relation, resistance, submission, govern the dative of nouns, and require *a* before the next infinitive. The following do the same.

*Adroit, aisé, *agréable, agile, assidu, alerte, affreux, adonné, bon, beau, charmant, comparable, contraire, condamné, conforme, doux, désagréable, diligent, enclin, exact, empressé, effroiable, habile, horrible, hardi, facile, ingénieux, insensible, lent, oppose, occupé, nuisible, porté, sujet, prompt, admirable, prêt, ardent, propre, pareil, semblable, sensible, and all nouns of number.*

RULE III.

The preposition *in* is not expressed after the above adjectives, and when it comes before a participle active,

* But, if *aisé* is preceded by the impersonal *il est*, it requires the *de*, not *a*; it is the same with *facile*.

it is rendered by *à*, and the participle is rendered by the present of the infinitive. *With, of, from*, are also rendered by *de* before participles.

They are busy in writing—*Ils sont occupés à écrire.*

E X E R C I S E S.

(See RULE I.)

The sea was covered with English men of war, and the masts of the ships appeared like a forest. Life is full of misery, inquietudes, and troubles. Telemachus was overwhelmed with grief. He preached several sermons adorned with a moving eloquence. The casks are full of wine and brandy. She was deep in debt. You are accused of lying. They were tired with walking and drinking. The King's brother, though an excellent Prince, was incapable of commanding the Emperor's armies in Italy. Few people are pleased with their condition. They were enraged at the measures of the ministry. I am very sorry for your misfortune. He was surprised at a visit so little expected. The city is surrounded with ramparts, and a large ditch twenty feet deep.

(See RULE II. and III.)

The ambition of Princes is often hurtful to the subjects. A Prince ought to be slow to punish, and quick to reward. The King and the nation are equally inclined to peace. As we were ready to go out, we heard the news of my brother's death. There is a pleasure in doing good. Cæsar was dexterous in all sorts of exercises. You are more sensible of cold and heat than I thought. He is ingenious in all sorts of arts. They are always ready to dance, to play, and to sing. They are busy in settling the affairs of state. Men and women are condemned to die.

When Princes are surrounded with flatterers, they are liable to commit the grossest errors. The cask is full of my brother's wine. She was worthy of the esteem of so great a man. The Duke of Guise, nettled with the answer of the General, quitted the army. A ploughman seeing the Archbishop of Cologne go by, attended with many soldiers, burst out a laughing. The Duke, nettled with this reproach, replied in a passion. The cities of Ægypt are numerous, large, populous, full of magnificent temples and stately palaces, adorned with statues and columns. We are more sensible of pains than of pleasures. There is a great pleasure in teaching diligent scholars.

scholars. The fields are covered with sheep. The bodies of animals are also covered with other animals. The pit and boxes were crowded with gentlemen and ladies. We see the sea, lakes, and rivers, teeming with numberless kinds of living creatures. We find every mountain and marsh, wilderness and wood, plentifully stocked with birds and beasts. The place was furnished with arms, money, and powder. He was very glad to see his father again. I am tired with reading. It is dangerous to go out when it rains. She was pleased with your present. She is always ready to dance, to play, and to sing. The Carthaginians were busy in recruiting the army commanded by Annibal. The Roman Ambassadors, satisfied with the reasons of Jugurtha, always supported with large sums of money, returned to Rome. Jugurtha had been charged with putting to death, Hiempsal, a Numidian Prince, by the most cruel and barbarous torments. I am satisfied with the behaviour of my son. A man who is deep in debt, is in continual inquietudes. He is unworthy of the notice of an honest man, though he is loaded with praises by ignorant people. The King's picture is adorned with diamonds, and other precious stones. France being exhausted of men and money, sued for peace. My uncle has married Mrs. Stuart. They seem very much pleased with one another.

C H A P. IV.

Of PRONOUNS PERSONAL.

RULE I.

When the following pronouns stand as nominatives to a verb, and there is no other nominative to the same verb, they are rendered as follows :

I	by	<i>je</i>	as	I eat— <i>je mange</i>
Thou	by	<i>tu</i>	as	thou speakest— <i>tu parles</i>
He	by	<i>il</i>	as	he writes— <i>il écrit</i>
They, masc.	by	<i>ils</i>	as	they love— <i>ils aiment.</i>

RULE II.

When the above pronouns come together, or meet with another nominative prefixed to the same verb, and when they are not nominatives to any verb, and after the impersonal, *it is*, *it was*, *c'est*, *c'étoit*, they are rendered as follows :

H

I by

I by *moi* at the end of a sentence; by *moi je*, followed by a verb, if the other nominative is followed by a verb; and by *moi nous*, if it is not.—Observe, that *nous* is sometimes separated from *moi*, in order to be placed before the verb.

Thou, by *toi*; he, by *lui*; they, *masc.* by *eux*; as
The sister, the mother, and I.

La sœur, la mère, et moi.

He, they, and I—*Lui, eux, et moi.*—It is he—*C'est lui.*—It is they—*Ce sont eux.*

He smokes, and I play—*Il fume, et moi je joue.*

My brother and I play at cards.

Mon frère et moi nous jouons aux cartes.

The sister, I, and the mother, went to the play.

La sœur, moi, et la mère, nous allâmes à la comédie.

He and they are good friends.

Lui et eux sont bons amis.

His brother and he are dead.

Son frère et lui sont morts.

My sister and they are gone out.

Ma sœur et eux sont sortis.

The master is taller than he.

Le maître est plus grand que lui.

The pronouns *she*, *we*, *us*, *ye* or *you*, *they*, *fem.* are always rendered in French by *elle*, *nous*, *vous*, *elles*. Observe, that *thou*, *us*, *ye*, are never expressed in French, in imperatives.

RULE III.

When a question is asked, *je*, *tu*, *il*, *elle*, *nous*, *vous*, *ils*, *elles*, are placed after the verb in simple tenses, and between the auxiliary and the participle in the compounds; as

Do I speak? *parle je?* Has he spoken? *a-t-'il parlé?* In this case, if the verb ends with a vowel, we always put a *t* between the verb and the pronoun; as

Has she said? *a-t-elle dit?* Does he speak? *parle-t-il?*

Observe, that when we make use of *est-ce que*, to ask a question, as is very common in French, the pronoun is not put after the verb, but remains before it; as

Do

Do I speak French?—*Est-ce-que je parle Francois?*
 Has he spoke?—*Est-ce-qu'il a parlé.*

R U L E IV.

When a substantive is the nominative to a verb, in an interrogative sentence, it must be placed before the verb, and a pronoun nominative of the third person, of the same number and gender, must be put in French after the verb, or after the auxiliary, though there is none in English; as

Is the King coming?—*Le Roi vient-il?*

Are my brothers come?

Mes freres sont ils venus? Except,

1. When there is a pronoun of the first, or of the second person; as

Are my father and I blind?

Mon pere et moi, sommes nous aveugles?

Do you and your brother learn French?

Vous et votre frere, apprenez vous le François?

2. When we use *est-ce-que*; as

Is the King coming?—*Est-ce-que le Roi vient?*

Is the Queen dead?—*Est-ce-que la Reine est morte?*

Est-ce-que is of very great use in French, for asking questions, as it can serve in all interrogative sentences.

R U L E V.

Pronouns personal, when used as nominatives, must be repeated before every verb in French, when they are in different tenses, when one passes from the affirmative to the negative, and from the negative to the affirmative; as

I say, and will always say—*Je dis, et je dirai toujours.*

R U L E VI.

When *it* is the nominative to a verb, and relates to a noun masculine, it is rendered like *he*, and like *she* if the noun is feminine; as

There is the knife; it is new.

Voila le couteau; il est neuf.

Take the orange; it is good.

Prenez l'orange; elle est bonne.

RULE VII.

He, she, they, in the following cases, are generally rendered thus :

1. By *ce*, when they stand before any tense of the verb *to be*, followed by an article.

2. By *ce* likewise before the same verb, followed by a noun plural.

She is a charming girl—*C'est une charmante fille.*

She is an angel—*C'est une Ange.*

They are officers—*Ce sont des officiers.*

They are the best troops in the world.

Ce sont les meilleures troupes du monde.

3. By *celui, celle, ceux, celles*, coming before who, that, or any of their cases, when they are used in an indeterminate sense, not relating to any body mentioned before, and only implying any person, one, or any body ; but, if they relate to any body mentioned before, they are then rendered by *lui, elle, eux* ; as

He who practises virtue lives happy.

Celui qui pratique la vertu vit heureux.

I am surprised Mr. Lamb got married ; he, who was so much against matrimony—*Je suis surpris que Mr. Lamb se soit marié ; lui, qui étoit si fort contre le mariage.*

He, in the first case, means any one ; in the second, it means only Mr. Lamb.

RULE VIII.

The pronouns I, thou, (he, she, it,) they, coming after the words *here, there*, are rendered by *me, te, (le, la,) les*, and must come first in French. The verb *to be*, is not then expressed ; as

Here I am, *me voici.* There she is, *la voila.* There he is, *le voila.* Here it is, *le, or la voici.* There they are, *les voila.*

RULE IX.

To me (is rendered)	} by {	<i>me</i> <i>te</i> <i>lui</i>	} To us To you To them	} by {	<i>nous</i> <i>vous</i> <i>leur,</i>
To thee					
To him, to her					

Except in the three following cases, where they are rendered thus :

To

To me	} by }	à moi à toi à lui, à elle	To us	} by }	à nous à vous à eux.
To thee			To you		
To him, to her			To them		

1. After the verbs—to think, to go, to come, to run, to run to, and after the impersonal, *it is, it was, &c.* and verbs reciprocal and neuter ; as

He came to me, *il vint à moi.* I was going to you, *j'allois à vous.*

2. When they are not accompanied with a verb.

3. When a verb governs two or three datives in the same sentence ; as

He spoke to me and to him—*Il parla à moi & à lui.*

He wrote to my brother and to me.

Il écrivit à mon frere & à moi.

Observe, that *to* is often left out in English before the said pronouns, but it makes no difference in the French ; as

He gave me the bread

He gave the bread to me

} *Il me donna le pain.*

Observe also, that *to me, to thee,* are made by *moi, toi,* with an imperative without a negation, and are placed after it ; and by *me, te,* with a negation, and come before the imperative ; as

Give me the bread—*Donne moi le pain.*

Don't give me the bread—*Ne me donne pas le pain.*

R U L E X.

The pronouns in the accusative case are rendered as follows :

Me	} by }	{ me te le }	Her, it, fem.	} by }	{ la les,
Thee			Them		
Him, it					

Except in the two following cases, where they are made by *moi, toi, lui, elle, elles.*

1. After prepositions ; as, after me, *après moi.* Before him, *avant lui.* Before them, *avant eux.* For her, *pour elle.* For them, *pour elles.*

† *Me, thee,* are also rendered by *moi, toi,* after an imperative without a negation ; and are placed after it ; but, if the imperative is attended with a negation, they are made by *me, te,* and are placed before the imperative, and after the negation.

2. When they meet together, or are joined with a substantive in the accusative ; and when they come after the conjunction *and*; not followed by a verb.

He invited my sister, him, and me.

Il invita ma sœur, lui, & moi.

RULE XI.

The pronouns *me, te, lui, le, la, leur, les, (nous, vous,)* in the accusative, or dative, are always placed immediately before the verb ; except when they come with an imperative without a negation, for then they are placed after it ; but if there is a negation, or if the imperative is in the third person, they are placed before it. The pronouns *moi, toi, à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux, à elles,* are always placed after the verb.

He knows him, *il le connoit.* I have seen them, *je les ai vus.* He loves me, *il m'aime.* Give her to him, *donnez la lui.* He don't love me, *il ne m'aime pas.* Don't give her to him, *ne la lui donnez pas.* Let him take it, *qu'il le prenne.* He told them, *il leur dit.* Give me the book, *donne moi le livre.* Don't give me the book, *ne me donne pas le livre.* He took them, *il les prit.* Has he taken them ? *les a-t-il pris ?* Desire him to walk in, *priez le d'entrer.* Send it to him, *envoyez le lui.* He sent it to him, *il le lui envoya.* Don't send it to him, *ne le lui envoyez pas.*

RULE XII.

All the pronouns, datives, and accusatives, are repeated before their verbs in French, though they are not in English ; as

I love and esteem him, *je l'aime & l'estime.*

When two of the above pronouns come together in the same sentence, they are placed in the following order :

Me, te, nous, vous, always come before *lui, leur, le, la, les,*—*Le, la, les,* always come before *lui, leur, moi, toi.*

He gave him to me, *il me le donna.*—I promised him to her, *je le lui promis.*—I sent them to them, *je les leur envovai.*—He will give it to you, *il vous le donnera.*—She

shewed

shewed them to him, *elle les lui montra.*—Give it to me, *donne le moi.*—He will send it to us; *il nous l'enverra.*

RULE XIII.

Him, her, them, being joined with *who, that,* or any of their cases, are made by *celui celle, ceux, celles, fem.* and to *him, to her, to them,* by *à-ce-lui, à celle, à ceux, à celles, fem.* Of *him, of her, of them*—*de celui, de celle, de ceux, de celles.* They are placed after the verb.

E X E R C I S E S

Upon PRONOUNS PERSONAL.

(See RULES I. and II.)

I am speaking. He was going. We have been ill-used. You are mistaken. They were further than I. He and I sent fine presents to Mr. B. He writes, and I read. They were wiser than they. The sister and he are mortal enemies. We denied all, but they have owned all. He was then in Germany, and I was in England. You are richer than they. I, who have always done my duty. He was drinking, and they were playing. She, he, I, and my cousin were dancing. The mother and he were dead. They, and my father, are gone out.

(See RULES III, IV, V, and VI.)

Is he learning the lesson? Does she speak English? Am I an Irishman? Are they come? Has he given bread and money to poor people? Do they love English beer? Is the Queen handsome? Did the man speak French? Are we the first. My brother and I. Was the father an officer? I said then, and say now the same thing. I saw the King's palace: it is very ugly. Are the sisters and he returned from the East-Indies? Is the house old? no: it is new. Are they and I come here to be ill-used? Drink some beer: it is good. Are English horses dear in America? Are the Irish honest?

(See RULES VII. and VIII.)

The Duke of Bedford died last year; he was the richest nobleman in the kingdom. Mr. Hughes's daughters are married. They were pretty girls. He who sits in the elbow chair, is a bishop; but he who is standing, is the Earl of March. He was the handsomest man in the court when he was young. They who entered the camp first were rewarded.

The

The lady who sings, and she who dances, are sisters. They are the most sprightly girls in the town. Mr. Hart is wholly retired from the world; he, who was so fond of pleasure, leads now a recluse life. Will the English suffer such an insult; they, who are the masters of the sea? You have called the maid. There she is. Where is the book? There it is. Where are they? Here they are. Would Miss Law marry a footman; she, who is so proud?

(See RULES IX, X, XI, XII, and XIII.)

She spoke to me. They said to him. He sent them nosegays. We were coming to you. He made her a present. He came back to me, and told me. Lend me a guinea. Don't * plague me. She spoke to her, to him, and to me. Will you send the books to him or to me? I will send them to him. Will he send me the books? There she is; speak to her. There he is; but don't speak to him. Is it to me, or to him, you speak? They gave a reward to him who discovered the plot. Give the nosegay to her that speaks to you.

(See RULES X, XI, XII, and XIII.)

He called me. She came before me. I like him. We were with him. He married her. He will go out with her. She hates them, yet she lives with them. They love the sister and him. Don't use me ill. Beat him. He will send her to me. Send her to me to-morrow. We sent him to them. Ye will give him to her. Will you give them to him? Give it him. If you will sell them to me, I will buy them, and send them to her. They hate and despise him. You have offended the father and me. Have you shewed them to him? She sold it to me this morning. He will send it to us; then I shall bring it to you. Sell it to him, or to them. Invite him who sent you money.

GENERAL EXERCISES *upon* PRONOUNS PERSONAL.

Few people prefer the blame that is useful to them, to the praise that betrays them. Do you speak of him who has robbed me? In vain the unfortunate mother intreated her. You lent me a book when you and I were in London; there it is: I like it much; for it has taught me very curious things. He who sold it to me had found it. They who employed them as useful instruments for wicked purposes,

* *Don't*, or *not*, is *ne* before the verb, and *pas* after it.

abandoned

abandoned them, when they saw them in the hands of justice. I bought the birds, and he brought them home. Has the King made him a Knight? Have they bought him apples and pears? I suffer, and he too.

They shewed me the house: it is fine. The mother and they were in the house when it took fire. Did the man speak to him? He and I drank white wine, but they drank red. Is the house let? Is Miss Carr married? The father bought him a silver watch: is it a good one? sell it to me. He has played with him. Does Mr. Brown keep good horses? Truth is agreeable; let us seek it. My uncle and I are good friends. Speak to them in English. Don't speak to them in English. She lived with her sometimes. Has the master promised it to him? Make them go out. I called her; she answered, here I am. The King made him a Knight of St. Lewis, and gave him a regiment; a reward worthy of a King, and well deserved.

I stayed with them, but he went away. She made me beat him. Was Mr. Mill with me? She had wrote him a long letter. Did he set out before me? Don't awake her. Awake her.

He played, and they danced country dances. Believe her; she tells you the truth. They killed and buried him in the sand. He advised and persuaded her. Did he please* her? She, I, and he have seen it. It would be easy to me to be avenged of thee. Has my brother sent them to you? He has seen my cousin and him. When my father and I are in the country, he reads Latin books, and I go a-shooting. We asked them, if they had applied to him or to me. Would you trust him? It will be difficult to them. She, who believed it is Miss A——. The gentleman speaks to you; answer him in French, and desire him to come to dine with them; your brother and he are old acquaintances.

It will be easy to them to do it. I will send it to him, if he like it. Let him keep it, or else let him send it to me again. Has the Emperor made him a General and a Prince of the Empire? I read, and he writes the exercise. Is the pen good? very good. Will you have it? She hates and abhors me. Was he a merchant or an officer? Have they seen him with her? They who hate him, are enemies to merit. He was sick and they too. We were going to him but we met him coming to us. I saw tigers and leopards

* *P'aire* governs the dative.

they are very fierce animals. Could you do it without them.

C H A P. V.

R U L E I.

People, they, we, any body, men, are rendered by *on*, when they don't relate to a particular noun, or pronoun mentioned before; that is, when we speak in general, as

They love roast beef in England.

On aime le bœuf roti in Angleterre.

People think so, *on le croit.*

R U L E II.

When *one* is the nominative to a verb, that is, when it means *a person*, it is rendered by *on*; as

One would think, *on croiroit.*

R U L E III.

When *it* is the nominative to a verb passive, and does not relate to a noun mentioned before, it is rendered by *on*; the verb must then be turned by the active voice; as

It was thought (turn) they did think, *on croyoit.*

It has been said (turn) they have said, *on a dit.*

But, if *it* relates to a noun, it must be rendered and placed like *him*, or *her*; the verb is also rendered by the active voice, and *on* is put before it; as

There has been an eclipse, but it has not been seen in England—*Il y a eu une éclipse, mais on ne la pas vue en Angleterre.*

R U L E IV.

'The passive voice is seldom used in French; to turn such sentences from English into French, proceed as follows:—Put the verb in the same tense of the active voice, that it occupies in the passive in English; then make the noun that is nominative in English, the oblique case in French; at the head of the sentence put *on*; as

A tragedy was acted yesterday (turn) they acted yesterday a tragedy, *on a représenté hier une tragedie.*—

He was promised a reward (turn) they have promised him a reward, *on lui a promis une recompense.*—I was told (turn) one told me, *on m'a dit.*

There

There is an exception to this rule as to the nominative; that is, when the nominative is followed by *which*, or *that*, it remains also nominative in French, though the verb is put in the active voice with *on*: *which*, and *that*, are then rendered by *que*; as

The tragedy that was acted yesterday (turn) the tragedy which they acted yesterday, *la tragedie qu'on joua hier*.

R U L E V.

On must be repeated before every verb, and is always placed at the head of the sentence, except in interrogations, for then it comes after the verb. Verbs coming with *on*, must be put in the third person of the singular; as, People drink, play, and sing, *on boit, on joue, et on chante*.

E X E R C I S E S.

(See RULES I, II, III, IV, and V.)

People think that we shall have peace. They think in England *that people are slaves in France. One would imagine, that she is already married. It is asserted that you are a Frenchman, because you are thin. My coat is made, and it was brought to me yesterday. An express was sent yesterday to Vienna. When the cause of the war shall be known, people will be amazed. The expedient that was proposed in the King's council, was rejected. I am told that the gold watch that was given him, is lost. The order that was sent to the officer. A remedy was proposed. They were asked, if they knew that a letter had been sent to him.

It was said that two men of war of the first rate had been put in commission, and that the Captains †were to sail immediately. A large comet was seen in the year 1685. When the news of the taking of Pondicherry was brought to London, the guns were fired, the bells were rung, and the greatest demonstrations of joy were seen every where. When the Romans heard that the Consul had been slain, and the army cut to pieces, troops were immediately sent to Spain, and all the young men capable of bearing arms were listed. Was the Miser acted last night? Was my brother told, that the dinner had been put off?

* *That* is made by *que*.

† *Were* is made by the imperfect of *devoir*.

Great warlike preparations are making in France, and in the other kingdoms of Europe. Was the King of Prussia talked of before last war? The play that was acted, is *Zara*, a tragedy of Voltaire's. The plan that was approved of and put in execution, was certainly the boldest that ever was formed. I am wanted. Am I wanted? Can one see the King's apartments? So much diligence and application is seldom found in youth. Three or four scholars may be taught the same lesson by the same master; yet one would hardly believe how much one or two improve more than the rest. Pray, Sir; will you tell me, if the cause of winds was ever known?

God will bless them who obey him. All sorts of fruits were brought on the table in large silver dishes. We were presented to the King's officers, who asked us many questions. The King heard, that one of the two captives, which had been taken for Phœnicians, had been sent into horrid desarts. He sent for me, for he wanted to see me; he saw, and heard me with pleasure, and when he found out that Metophs had deceived him out of avarice, he condemned him to perpetual imprisonment, and took from him the immense wealth that he possessed unjustly. They were taken for Jews. Was he taken for a Jew? A price was set on the Pretender's head. A present was sent her of a piece of silk, which cost nine shillings a yard. People in Holland are more covetous than it is said. All the treaties that had been made with them, were broken. Youth would not commit so many disorders, if they had good impressions given them at first. The hat had been taken from him on Tuesday, but it was sent to him again on Friday. Exorbitant duties were laid on all sorts of provisions. They were offered large sums of money if they could discover him, as it was said.

C H A P. VI.

R U L E I.

Whenever one can put, *of them, of it*, after a word in English, we put *en* in French, and place it immediately before the verb, except when it is in the imperative, without a negation, for then it comes after it, and also after the pronoun, if there is one; as

I had two guineas; I gave him one.

J'avois deux guinées; je lui en donnai une.

You

You have two horses ; lend him one.

Vous avez deux chevaux ; prêtez lui en un.

If he had an orange, he would give you a bit.

S'il avoit une orange, il vous en donneroit un morceau.

R U L E II.

The following words standing for nouns, or pronouns, are rendered by *en*, chiefly after verbs, or adjectives governing the genitive: *one, any, one's, some* (about him, her, it, them), *of him, of her, of them* (with him, her, it, them), *of, of it*; as

He had money yesterday ; has he any now ?

Il avoit de l'argent hier ; en a-t-il à présent ?

Has he pictures ? yes, he has fine ones.

A-t-il des tableaux ? oui, il en a de beaux.

We were talking about him ; *nous en parlions.*

R U L E III.

At it, by it, in it, for it, of, of it, on it, to it, from it, with it, from whence, coming after a verb, or an adjective governing the dative, are rendered by *y*; but by *en*, if the verb or adjective governs the genitive; as

He thinks on it ; *il y pense.*—She is sorry for it ; *elle en est fâchée.*—I aim at it ; *J'y aspire.*

R U L E IV.

When *it* stands for a sentence, or a part of it, or for an adjective, it is rendered by *le*; but by *en*, if the verb or adjective governs the genitive; as

I told him you was ill, and he believed it.

Je lui dis que vous étiez malade, et il le crut.

I remember it ; *Je m'en souviens.*

R U L E V.

When *so* relates to something mentioned before, it is rendered by *le*; as

I was ill, and am so still.

J'étois malade, et le suis encore.

So is often understood in English, chiefly in negative sentences; but it must be carefully expressed in French; as

I am rich, and you are not.

Je suis riche, et vous ne l'êtes pas.

RULE VI.

En, y, are placed immediately before the verb, except when it is in the imperative without a negation; for then they come after it, and after the pronoun, if there is one.

Le is placed like pronouns of the third person.

He gave me some; *il m'en donna*.—She applies to it; *elle s'y applique*.—Think on it; *pensez y*.—Don't think on it; *n'y pensez pas*.—Give me some; *donnez m'en*.—Send him some; *envoyez lui en*.—Don't send him any; *ne lui en envoyez point*.—They say so; *ils le disent*.—Tell him so; *dites le lui*.—Don't tell him so; *ne le lui dites pas*.

RULE VII.

When *en, y*, meet together in a sentence, *y* is placed before *en*; but, if *en* is Englished by *in* before a participle, *en* comes then before *y*.

There is some on the table; *il y en a sur la table*.

In thinking on it; *en y pensant*.

E X E R C I S E S.

(See RULES I, VI, and VII.)

They sent him five guineas, yet he wants some more. I had apples in my silk-coat pocket; he took twenty, eat four, and sold sixteen. If he had three daughters, he would give him one. He bought eggs yesterday for a shilling a hundred, and eat fifty before dinner for a wager. She has sent you five bottles of red Oporto wine, and, if you like it, she will send you two dozen. Have they good horses? yes, they have many. I love Florence wine in summer; I drink a glass or two after dinner. I have bought fine flowers; I will give him one if he likes it. We have quitted the house, and bought a more convenient one. I will go into the kitchen, and if I find copper-candlesticks there, I will bring one or two.

(See RULES II, III, IV, V, VI, and VII.)

He had some money; has he any now? I don't know; ask him, if he has borrowed some. He loves Miss Linton, for he is always speaking of her. I took a stick, and gave him a blow with it. I love pictures; when I go to Italy, I will buy fine ones. They love you; for when you was appointed

pointed Governor of Jamaica, they were very glad of it; at least they seemed so. Give me the book; I want it. Do you want it? speak to him about it, and tell him. Don't speak to him about it; he would be angry at it. If you are inclined to it, you will succeed in it. We have been surprised at it. Have we been surprised at it? I believe so.

Are you satisfied, Sir? yes, I am. He bought bricks, and built houses with them. Is he the master? yes, he is. The King has forced him to it. Has the King forced him to it? I was thinking on it. The house is to be sold; I will give eighty pounds for it. We found something comical in it. They were used very ill, and are so still. He sent me a bank-note; I thank him for it. They have agreed to it. Take the cane, and make use of it. The brother was sent for from America, They say he will make him a Bishop, if he finds him capable of it.

You beat her, and she complained of it to the mistress, who was very glad of it. Do you love oranges? yes, I do; will you have any? I am obliged to you, Sir; take four for him, and two for her. I want money; if you had any, would you lend me some? I would do it with pleasure. I bought a silver watch; but I sold it again, and got a guinea by it. We were drinking wine when he came in: I offered him a glass; he drank it, and thanked me for it. If you have good cheese, send me some. Will he get something by it? it is thought so. Has he any bread? if he had, he would give you some. Will you remember it to-morrow? Has he made use of it? If you were used to it, you would like it. If I was satisfied with you then, I am much more so now than ever. He laughed at it in his heart. They who take the name of God in vain, will repent it. God has given him honours and riches; but, if he abuses them, he will be deprived of them. My father wanted a fiddle; he sent my brother and me to buy him one; he who sold it, knew the value of it. There is a bunch of grapes: eat it, or extract the juice from it. He appeared quite disconcerted at it. He asked me if I would drink. Is there any harm in it? if there was, she would have told you of it. The more I think on it, the more I am surprised at it.

He is very dextrous at it. Has he any children? he had three; they got the small-pox, and all died of it. I saw Mr. and Mrs. Smith: I like them very much, for they are

† *I do*, is not expressed in French.

good sort of people ; I have received many civilities from them. They who bought the house, got ten pounds by it. I read Telemachus : I find good lessons of morality in it. If I was yet a shepherd as I was then, I should be very happy, said Telemachus. Colbert, who may be looked upon as the founder of trade in France, agreed to it. He ascended the throne by a wicked action, and maintained himself on it by all sorts of crimes. He is very passionate : are you so too ? We think ourselves more unhappy than we are. He had many sisters, but he got rid of them. If you apply to it carefully. The place is very lucrative ; he aimed at it a long time before it was vacant ; if he succeeds in it, his fortune is made.

C H A P. VII.

Of PRONOUNS POSSESSIVE.

RULE I.

The following pronouns possessive are rendered as follows, before nouns singular masculine, or nouns beginning with a vowel, or an *h* not sounded.

My	} by	{ <i>mon</i> <i>ton</i> <i>son</i> }	} as	{ <i>mon épée</i> <i>ton ame</i> <i>son père</i> }	my sword
Thy					thy soul
His, her, its					her father.

My father ; *mon père*.—His father ; *son père*.

Before a noun feminine beginning with a consonant, or an *h* sounded, they are made thus :

My	} by	{ <i>ma</i> <i>ta</i> <i>sa</i> }	} my mother thy sister Her mother	{ <i>ma mere</i> <i>ta sœur</i> <i>sa mere</i> }
Thy				
His, her, it's				

His sister ; *sa sœur*.

Before all nouns plural, whether masculine or feminine, or beginning with an *h*, a vowel, or a consonant, they are rendered by *mes*, *tes*, *ses* ; as

My sisters ; *mes sœurs*.—My swords ; *mes épées*.

Her books ; *ses livres*.—It's qualities ; *ses qualités*.

RULE II.

Our, *your*, *their*, are rendered by *notre*, *votre*, *leur*, before a noun singular ; by *nos*, *vos*, *leurs*, before a noun plural ; as—Our sister ; *notre sœur*.—Our brother ;

notre

notre frere.—Our brothers ; *nos freres.*—Their books ;
leurs livres.

RULE III.

All the above pronouns are often understood in English before the second, and other nouns in a sentence ; but they must be carefully expressed in French ; as

My father and mother (that is, my father and my mother) ; *mon pere & ma mere.*

They are also expressed before nouns signifying relations, or friends, when we call to them :

Father, you are wanted ; *mon pere, on vous demande.*

Here, friend, tell me ; *ecoutez, mon ami, dites moi.*

RULE IV.

The aforesaid pronouns are rendered as follows, when they come between a noun denoting some part of the body, and a verb signifying *to cut, to hurt, to pinch, to break, to bind, to rub, to hide, to cover, to wash, to clean,* and the like.

My	}	by	{ <i>me</i> }	{ our }	}	by	{ <i>nous</i> }			
Thy								{ <i>te</i> }	{ your }	{ <i>vous</i> }
His, her										

Observe, that if *his, her, their,* relate to the nominative of the sentence, they are then rendered by *se*.

He treads on my foot ; *il me marche sur le pied.*

He broke her head ; *il lui cassa la tête.*

He broke his leg in dancing.

Il se cassa la jambe en dansant.

I have cut my finger ; *je me suis coupé le doigt.*

RULE V.

When the following pronouns relate to nouns masculine, or feminine, they are thus rendered.

Masc. Singular.

Mine ; *le mien*

Thine ; *le tien*

His, her's ; *le sien,*

Plural.

Les miens

Les tiens

Les siens.

Fem. Singular.

la mienne

la tienne

la sienne.

Plural.

les miennes

les tiennes

les siennes.

Masc. Singular.

Our's ; *le notre*Your's ; *le votre*Their's ; *le leur*.

Fem. Singular.

*la notre**la votre**la leur*.

Plural, masculine and feminine : *les notres, les vôtres, les leurs* ; as

There is your wife and mine.

Voilà votre femme & la mienne.

I saw his father and her's.

Je vis son père & le sien.

I bought his house and their's.

J'achetai sa maison et la leur.

His daughters and their's are married.

Ses filles et les leurs sont mariées.

N. B. When *of mine, of thine, of your's, of their's*, come after a substantive, they are made by *de mes, de tes, de vos, de leurs* ; as

A book of mine ; *un de mes livres.*

A friend of their's ; *un de leurs amis.*

RULE VI.

When the aforesaid pronouns come after any tense of the verb *to be*, denoting property, or possession, they are rendered thus : except when *it*, is rendered by *ce* ; for then they are rendered by *le mien*, &c.

Mine	} by	{ <i>à moi</i>	{ our's	} by	{ <i>à nous</i>						
Thine						{ <i>à toi</i>	{ your's	{ <i>à vous</i>			
His									{ <i>à lui</i>	{ their's	{ <i>à eux, à elles.</i>
Her's											

That house is mine ; *cette maison est à moi.*

Is that his house ? *est-ce-là sa maison ?*—No, it is mine ; *non c'est la mienne.*—It is my servant, or your's, who said so ; *c'est mon domestique ou le votre qui l'a dit.*

Observe, that *to be*, denoting property, always governs the dative ; as

Whose house is that ? *à qui est cette maison ?*—Mr. Smith's ; *à Mr. Smith.*—This book is my brother's ; *ce livre est à mon frère.*

EXERCISES.

E X E R C I S E S.

(See RULES I, II, and III.)

I sold my hat, my cane, my history, my sword, and my stockings. Her brother has bought her horse, and his house. Her apron and her garters are on the kitchen table, with your buckles. His verses, and his prose, are curiosities. Our son, and our daughters, are in Ireland. We were speaking of our gardens and fields. I know their merit, and their foibles. His daughter, and her son, are dead. I was speaking of your friends and relations. The house is small, but it has its conveniences. My house and my gardens, cost me a thousand pounds. Sister, lend me your scissors. There they are, brother, take them. His wife's sister spoke to her father, and to his daughters. His sword is six feet long, and the head of his cane, six inches. My son met her daughters, with my cousin's husband. She wrote to her son and daughters. His house and gardens are dear. His mother, and her brother, were walking in her gardens with her. Their wine and cakes are very bad. I love his brother and sister. Her brother and sister, are contented with their places. Do you love her father?

(See RULE IV.)

Miss Deals has burnt her finger. Wash your mouth, and your hands. Has he broke his arm? You hurt my finger. He bound her hands, and they broke her legs. A cannon-ball carried off his head. She pulled out his eyes. King David killed Goliath, and cut off his head. She cleans her teeth every morning. You twisted their fingers, and hurt them very much. He splits our heads. I bit my tongue, as I was telling a lie to the master. Did you bite your tongue? Rub your eyes. She hid her face with her fan. I had hurt my leg, and my thigh. I closed his mouth.

(See RULE V.)

His book and mine are neatly bound. Your house and mine are burnt. Her daughter is richer than his. His lesson is easier than her's. My nosegay is finer than his. Your sons and her's were with me, when I spoke to her. His brothers and mine are yet alive. My children, and his, are arrived from Spain. Her reasons are better than his. His friends have more interest than her's. Her house is dearer than our's. My horse and your's are in the field. His field is larger than our's, or their's. Your horses are better than his,

his, but his dogs are better than your's. My sisters and their's are walking in the park. He submits his opinion to your's. We were talking of his actions, and of your's. I saw to-day a friend of your's; he was walking with an uncle of mine. A relation of his told me.

(See RULE VI.)

The gardens are mine, but the house is his, or her's. My sword was your's. The coach was their's, but now it is our's. The ring is their's, and the scissors are her's. The ring is my cousin's; send it to him. He lost a book of his. The buckles were my sister's; yet he took them away. If the house was my father's, he would sell it, and buy your's. I found a steel pen; is it your's? no, 'tis my father's, or their's.

GENERAL EXERCISES.

Are the Prussian troops better disciplined than our's? He is a wicked man; for he has knocked down his own mother, and stamped upon her; afterwards he broke her head with a hammer. Her father and mother are alive, but his mother and sisters are dead. It seldom rains in Egypt; but the Nile, a famous river, waters it with its regular over-flowings. Your reflections and his are just. His mother is older than mine. They admired his letter and her's. They tied his hands, and cut off his ears. Are our horses esteemed abroad? yes, they are. You split his head. His arguments were stronger than their's. She treads on my finger. Mr. Blake has hurt his foot. I cut my leg yesterday. The sea has its flux, and reflux. Their hopes and his are ill-grounded. You impair your health, and I take care of mine. If you like my wine better than his, I will send you some. Babylon, the seat of the Kings of Assyria, was founded by Semiramis, but Nebuchadnezzar gave it its greatest beauties: it had an hundred brass gates; its walls were built with large bricks, fifty cubits thick, and two hundred high. His father and mother were equally inclined to it. The King ordered his head to be cut off. You will break all your teeth. He fell from his horse, and broke his thigh. He pricks her leg with a pin. Take care of her children, and of mine. Wash his face. You hurt her arm. My brothers, and her's, are come from Vienna. Wash your teeth with salt, and warm vinegar. Despair and tyranny had armed them at first; liberty had stirred up their courage; and the Princes of Nassau had made them

them excellent soldiers. The empire, such as it is, owes its origin to Charlemagne, a King of the second race of the monarchs of France, who left it to one of his sons, having freed it from the yoke of the barbarians. He trusted to providence, and to his own courage. She covered his face with a fan. She covered her face with a fan. Was the house his, or her's? no, it was their's, and now it is your's.

C H A P. VIII.

Of the PRONOUNS RELATIVE, and DEMONSTRATIVE:

Who, Which, What, That, This, Those, These.

R U L E I.

Who, is always rendered by *qui*, and must be repeated before every verb in the same sentence in French, though it is not expressed in English; as

The man who dances, sings, and plays.

L'homme qui danse, qui chante, & qui joue.

When a question is asked, *who* is often rendered by *qui-est-ce-qui*; as

Who has created the world?

Qui, or qui-est-ce-qui a créé le monde?

R U L E II.

Of whom is rendered by *dont*, or *de qui*. *Dont* is used after nouns, and *de qui* after verbs, and whenever a question is asked.

The man of whom he complains.

L'homme dont il se plaint.

Whom does he complain of? *de qui se plaint-il?*

I know of whom she speaks; *Je sais de qui elle parle.*

Whom is often left out in English, and *of* is then put at the end of the sentence; as

The man he complains of; *l'homme dont il se plaint.*

But it must be carefully expressed in French.

To whom is rendered by *à qui*; as

To whom do you speak? *à qui parlez vous?*

R U L E III.

Whom, the accusative, is always rendered by *que* except in the three following cases, where it is rendered by *qui*.

1. After

1. After prepositions ; as

For whom ? *pour qui ?*—After whom ? *après qui ?*

2. When it comes immediately after a verb, or after

a noun preceded by a verb ; as

I know whom you mean.

Je sais qui vous voulez dire.

Bring with your sister whom you please.

Amenez avec votre sœur qui vous voudrez.

3. In the sense of *what person*, and when a question is asked ; though in this case it is sometimes rendered by *qui-est-ce-que* ; as

Whom do you know in London ?

Qui connoissez vous à Londres ?

Whom do you inquire after ?

Qui-est-ce-que vous cherchez ? or, *qui cherchez vous ?*

Note. *Whom* is often left out in English, but it must be carefully expressed in French ; as

The man he loves (that is the man whom he loves).

L'homme qu'il aime.

The man he was taken for (or for whom he was taken) ; *l'homme pour qui il fut pris.*

R U L E IV.

Which is rendered in the following different ways.

1. When a question is not asked, and when it is not accompanied with a preposition, it is rendered by *qui* between a noun and a verb, not preceded by a noun, or a pronoun ; and by *que*, if there is a noun or pronoun between *which* and the verb.

Note. The preposition comes sometimes at the end of the sentence in English.

The sun which enlightens the world.

Le soleil qui éclaire le monde.

The sun which God created to enlighten the earth.

Le soleil que Dieu créa pour éclairer la terre.

The house which I bought ; *la maison que j'achetai.*

It is also rendered by *qui* before genitives of pronouns personal ; as

Which of us would dare to do it ?

Qui de nous oseroit le faire ?

2. By

2. By *lequel*, masc. *laquelle*, fem. (plural, *lesquels*, *lesquelles*), in the two following cases.

1. Before a genitive expressed or understood ; that is, when *of them* may be put after it ; as

I know which of the sisters he loves best.

Je sais laquelle des sœurs il aime le mieux.

2. When a question is asked, or when it comes between two verbs ; and when it comes after a preposition, if it relates to a foregoing noun, not to the noun that comes after it ; (except a genitive) as

There are two ladies ; which do you like best ?

Voilà deux dames ; laquelle aimez vous le mieux ?

I know which I love best.

Je sais laquelle j'aime le mieux.

The reasons on which the father grounds his pretensions ; *les raisons sur les quelles le pere fonde ses prétensions.*

The watch for which my brother gave ten guineas.

La montre pour laquelle mon frere a donné dix guinées.

Note. The preposition in English is often placed at the end of the sentence ; but it must be placed before *which* to turn it into French ; as

The watch which I paid ten guineas for (that is, for which I paid).

La montre pour laquelle j'ai payé dix guinées.

3. By *quel*, masc. *quelle*, fem.—Plural, *quels*, *quelles*, in the two following cases.

1. When it relates to, or agrees with the noun coming after it, and not with the noun going before—as—I knew in which chamber he was ; *je savois dans quelle chambre il étoit.*

Which book ? *quel livre ?*—Which is the shortest way ? *quel est le plus court chemin ?*

Which are the best troops in England ?

Quelles sont les meilleures troupes d'Angleterre ?

Which agrees here with *way*, and with *troops*. One may say, which way is the shortest ? which troops are the best.

4. By *cequi*, *ceque*, when it relates to a sentence, or a part of it, if it is not preceded by a preposition; that is, when the word *thing* may be added to it; as

Men are also divided every day, concerning the most indifferent things which happen, because they don't all consider the same object in the same light.

Les hommes sont aussi partagés tous les jours sur les choses les plus indifferentes, cequi arrive parcequ'ils ne considerent pas tous le meme objet de la meme maniere.

Which relates here to *men are divided*.

But, if *which* is accompanied with a preposition, it is rendered by *quoi*, (except after *dans*). *Quoi* is often also used after a preposition (except *par*), for variety's sake, relating to the foregoing noun; though, in this case, one may as well use *le quel*, *la quelle*. The ear must judge which is the best; as

The King laid a new duty on bread, upon which the whole kingdom revolted; *le roi mit un nouvel impôt sur le pain, sur quoi tout le royaume se revolta.*

The arms with which I defended myself.

Les armes avec quoi, or (avec les quelles) je me defendis.

The principle upon which I grounded my opinion.

Le principe sur quoi, or (sur le quel) je fondeis mon sentiment.

R U L E V.

Which is commonly understood in English in the two following cases: but it must be carefully expressed in French*.

1. When two or more verbs come together, the first having *which* before it.

2. When a verb comes after two nominatives; as

The parrot which talks, sings, and whistles so well.

Le peroquet qui parle, qui chante, et qui siffle si bien.

The house I bought; or, the house which I bought.

La maison que j'achetai.

The hat he found; or, the hat which he found.

Le chapeau qu'il trouva.

* By *qui*, or *que*, according to the fourth Rule.

RULE VI.

At which, denoting aim, design, end; *in which*, in the sense of *where*, *wherein*; *from which*, in the sense of *from whence*, *where from*, *where*; are rendered by *ou*; and *through which*, by *par où*; as

The house from which I come, or (from whence).

La maison d'où je viens.

The room in which we were (where we were).

La chambre où nous étions

The place which he aims at; *la place où il aspire.*

The fields through which we went.

Les prés par où nous passâmes.

Note. *Which* is often left out in English, and the preposition is then placed at the end of the sentence; but it must be expressed in French, and put at the head of the sentence; as

The house I come from (from which I come).

La maison d'où je viens.

The place he aims at (at which he aims).

La place où il aspire.

RULE VII.

Of which is rendered in the two following ways.

1. By *dont*, when a question is not asked, if it relates to a foregoing noun; as

The house of which I speak; *la maison dont je parle.*

But if the foregoing noun is in the dative, or is preceded by a preposition, or if a question is asked without a noun after it, it is then rendered by *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels*, *desquelles*, according to the number and gender of the noun; as

The horse, to the goodness of which I owe my life.

Le cheval, à la bonté duquel je dois la vie.

The mountain, on the top of which I was.

La montagne, sur le sommet de laquelle j'étais.

Which do you speak of? *duquel parlez vous?*

Note. *Which* is often left out in English, *of* being then placed at the end of the sentence; but it must be carefully expressed in French. Sometimes *of* is separated from *which*, but it makes no difference; as

The house we speak of; *la maison dont nous parlons.*

The house which we speak of.

La maison dont nous parlons.

2. By *de quel, de quelle, de quels, de quelles*, when it stands before a noun without an article to which it relates, whether a question is asked or no; as

Of which author? *de quel auteur?*

I know of which house he speaks.

Je sais de quelle maison il parle.

Which books do you make use of?

De quels livres vous servez vous?

RULE VIII.

Whose, denoting property, is always rendered by *à qui*; as

Whose house is that? *à qui est cette maison?*

When it stands between a preposition and a noun, it is made by *de qui*, or *duquel*, &c. if a question is not asked; as

The Prince under whose protection he was.

Le Prince sous la protection de qui, or duquel il étoit.

The Queen, without whose assistance.

La Reine, sans l'assistance de qui, or de la quelle.

But, if a question is asked, *de qui*, and not *du quel*, or *de la quelle*, &c. must be used, and the substantive must be placed after the verb; as

Whose conduct does he blame?

De qui blame-t-il la conduite?

In all other cases it is rendered like *of whom*; as

Alexander, whose courage is so well known.

Alexandre dont le courage est si connu.

RULE IX.

To which is rendered by *à quoi*, when it relates to a sentence, or a part of it, and very often when it relates to a foregoing noun, denoting inanimate things; though, in this case, one may also use *au quel, à la quelle; aux quels, aux quelles*; as

He said that I had wronged his family, and betrayed his friends:—to which I answered.

*Il dit que j'avois fait tort à sa famille, & trahi ses amis:
—à quoi je répondis.*

The

The science to which he applies.

La science à quoi (ou, à la quelle) il s'applique.

It is sometimes rendered by *où*, relating to inanimate things, in the sense of *whither*, or *being in*.

The house to which I sent him, is not far from here.

La maison où je l'ai envoyé n'est pas loin d'ici.

The perils to which we were exposed.

Les dangers où, or aux quels nous étions exposés.

In other cases it is made by *au quel*, *à la quelle*, *à quel*, *à quelle*, *aux quels*, or *quelles*, *à quels*, or *quelles*; according to the second and third observations of the fourth Rule.

To which did you give the preference?

Au quel donnez vous la préférence?

To which grammar do you give the preference? *à quelle grammaire donnez vous la préférence?*

RULE X.

What is rendered in the following ways.

1. By *ce qui*, when it comes immediately before a verb without any other nominative between; and by *ce que*, if there is one, if a question is not asked, and when it does not fall under the second or third case.

I know what makes him angry; *Je sais ce qui le fâche.*

What you say is surprising.

Ce que vous dites est surprenant.

What my father told you; *ce que mon père vous dit.*

Note. *Ce* must be put before every tense of the verb *être* in the second part of a sentence, when the first begins with *ce qui*, or *ce que*, and *de* must be put before the next infinitive; as

What afflicts him, is, that they think him guilty.

Ce qui l'afflige, c'est, qu'ils le croient coupable.

What I fear, is to see him.

Ce que je crains, c'est de le voir.

But if *être* is followed by an adjective, *ce* must be left out; as—What you say is surprising; *ce que vous dites est surprenant.*

2. By *que* before infinitives; as

I do not know what to offer him; *je ne sais que lui offrir.*

3. By *quoi* in the two following cases :

1. When it is accompanied with a preposition, and when the word *thing*, or *reason*, may be added to it.

I know in what he is mistaken.

Je sais en quoi il se trompe.

Do you know on what the King of Prussia grounds his pretensions? *savez vous sur quoi le Roi de Prusse fonde ses prétentions?*

2. When it comes between a verb and an adjective, without a substantive, and when it stands by itself, or comes at the end of a sentence; as

He has, I do not know what disagreeable in his manners; *il a, je ne sais quoi de désagréable dans ses manières.*

4. By *quel*, *quella*, *quels*, *quelles*, in the two following cases :

1. When it comes before a noun to which it relates.

In what room is he? *dans quelle chambre est-il?*

2. When it relates to a foregoing noun, or agrees with a noun coming after it, though it is sometimes separated from it by an adjective, or some other word; as

I have heard news; *J'ai appris des nouvelles.*

What are they? *quelles sont-elles?*

What is the most difficult thing?

Quelle est la chose la plus difficile?

What, in the first example, relates to news; and, in the second, to thing.

5. By *qu'est-ce-qui*, when a question is asked before a verb (except *to be*), if that verb has no other noun or pronoun for its nominative.

What makes him angry? *qu'est-ce-qui le fache?*

What prompted Cæsar to attack the Britons?

Qu'est-ce-qui engagea César à attaquer les Bretons?

What has caused that quarrel?

Qu'est-ce qui a causé cette querrelle?

But if the verb has a noun or a pronoun besides for its nominative, *what* must then be rendered by *que*, or *qu'est-ce que* instead of *qu'est-ce-qui*.

Observe; The pronoun nominative is placed before the verb with *qu'est-ce-que*, and after it with *que*.

What

What does he do? *que fait-il*; or, *qu'est-ce qu'il fait*?
 What did he say? *qu'est-ce qu'il disoit*? or, *que disoit-il*?

What says the aunt? *que dit la tante*?

What will my father say? *qu'est-ce que*, or *que dira mon père*?

6. By *qu'est-ce que*, and not by *que*, or *qu'est-ce qui*, when a question is asked, before any tense of the verb *to be*, if followed by a noun, not having the article *the* before it.

What is logick? *qu'est-ce que la logique*?

What is a spirit? *qu'est-ce qu'un esprit*?

But if *to be* is followed by the article *the*, what is then rendered by *quel*, *quelle*, and not by *qu'est-ce que*, unless the sentence may be turned by *what is the meaning of*, *what is meant by*, or *what sort of thing is*; as

What is the cause of winds?

Quelle est la cause des vents?

What is the handsomest thing in the world?

Quelle est la plus belle chose du monde?

In the above examples, *what* cannot be turned by *what is the meaning*; *what sort of thing*: but it can in the following; therefore, it must be rendered by *qu'est-ce que*.

What is the soul? *qu'est-ce que l'âme*.

In short, when *what* is used in the sense of, *what sort of thing is*, *what is the meaning of*, it is made by *qu'est-ce que* before *to be*.

7. By *combien*, when it can be turned by, *how much*?

What does it cost? *combien coute-t-il*?

RULE XI.

Of *what* is rendered by *de quoi*, and *to what*, by *à quoi*, in the three following cases.

1. When they begin an interrogative sentence, and are followed by a verb, and not by a noun; and when they stand by themselves; as

What does he complain of? *de quoi se plaint-il*?

To what does she apply herself? *à quoi s'applique-t-elle*?

2. After *it is*, *c'est*—*it was*, *c'étoit*, and the word *nothing*.

There is nothing in the world but what God is the author of; *il n'y a rien dans le monde de quoi Dieu ne soit l'auteur*.

It is what he applies to; *c'est à quoi il s'applique*.

It was what he complained of.

C'étoit de quoi il se plaignoit.

3. When they relate to things, or signify subject, reason, cause, or the matter something is made of; and when the word *thing* can be put after them; as

I know what it is made of; *Je sais de quoi il est fait*.

In other cases they are rendered like *what* (See Rule X.)

We need only turn *of* by *de*, and *to* by *à*.

He complains of what you said.

Il se plaint de ce que vous dites.

I apply to what will be useful to me one day.

Je m'applique à ce qui me sera un jour utile.

What house do you speak of?

De quelle maison parlez vous?

What vices is he inclined to? *à quels vices est-il enclin?*

RULE XII.

That is rendered in the following ways.

1. By *qui* between a noun and a verb, if there is no other nominative between; and by *que*, if there is any noun or pronoun between *that* and the verb; as

The things that please him the most.

Les choses qui lui plaisent le plus.

The horse that I ride; *le cheval que je monte*.

Note. *That* is often understood in English, but it must be carefully expressed in French, by *qui*, or *que*, according to the above rule; (except when it is understood before *which*; see the fourth observation) as

The things that please most, and are the most useful.

Les choses qui plaisent le plus, & qui sont les plus utiles.

The horse I bought; *le cheval que j'achetai*.

The money I spent; *l'argent que je dépensai*.

That is understood in the above examples before *are*,
I bought, I spent.

2. By

H. By *ce, cet, cette*, when it relates to the noun that comes after it.

Ce is used before nouns masculine beginning with a consonant, and *cet* before masculines beginning with a vowel*; as—That book; *ce livre*.—That bird; *cet oiseau*.—*Cette* is used before all nouns feminine.

That woman; *cette femme*.—That sword; *cette épée*.

Là is sometimes added to the substantive, in order to specify and particularize it still more:—That woman; *cette femme là*.

III. By *celà*†, when the word *thing* can be added to it, and when it stands for a sentence, or part of it; also when we point at, or shew something; and when it comes after *all* (not in the sense of whatever); also when it comes before *to be*, followed by an adjective, without a substantive.

He gave me that for my trouble.

Il m'a donné cela pour ma peine.

He eats too much; that makes him sick.

Il mange trop; cela le rend malade.

Shew me that; *montrez moi cela.*

I know all that; *Je sais tout cela.*

That was hard; *cela étoit fâcheux.*

Is that good? *cela est il bon?*

IV. By *celui, celle*, in the two following cases:

1. When it is expressed or understood† before *who, which, or whom* §.

That whom you love best.

Celui ou celle que vous aimez le mieux.

Take which you will; *prenez celle ou celui que vous voudrez.*

2. When it stands for a noun mentioned before.

The King's palace is fine, but that of the Queen is finer; *le palais du Roi est beau, mais celui de la Reine l'est davantage.*

* Or an h, mute.

† *Cela* is put before the verb *être* in interrogative sentences.

‡ It must always be expressed in French, though it is understood in English.

§ That which, in the sense of *what*, is rendered by *ce qui, ce que*.

Celui stands for a noun masculine, and *celle* for a feminine.

Là must be added to *celui*, *celle*, in the two following cases :

1. When *that* comes in a sentence with *this*, and when we point at a thing.

Take this, or that ; *prenez celui-ci, ou celui-là*.

2. When the substantive it stands for, can be put after it.

There are two hats ; which will you have ?

Voilà deux chapeaux ; le quel voulez vous ?—I will have that ; *Je veux celui-là*.

Hat may be put after *that*.

But if the substantive cannot be repeated after *that*, *là* must be left out ; as

The King's palace is fine, but that of the Queen is finer ; *le palais du Roi est beau, mais celui de la Reine l'est davantage*.—One could not say, but that palace of the Queen, &c.

V. By *ce* in an affirmative sentence before the verb *to be*, followed by an article, a pronoun possessive, or a proper name.

That is my book ; *c'est mon livre*.

That is a great loss ; *c'est une grande perte*.

And by *celà*, if the sentence is interrogative, and the word coming after it is a pronoun possessive, or relative ; or a noun with an article before it.

Is that your book ? *est-celà votre livre ?*

Was that the Marquis of Granby ?

Etoit-celà le Marquis de Granby ?

But, if the noun has no article, *ce* or *cette* only is commonly used ; unless we want to specify or particularize still more the thing spoken of ; for then we put *là* after the noun.

Is that gentleman an officer ? *ce monsieur est-il officier ?*
ou, ce monsieur là est-il officier ?

Is that woman married ? *cette femme là est elle mariée ?*

RULE XIII.

Those is rendered as follows :

1. By *ces* before a substantive.

Those

Those boys ; *ces garçons*.—Those girls ; *ces filles*.

II. By *ceux, celles*, fem. when it stands for a foregoing noun, and when it comes before *who, which, that*, or a genitive ; as

There are your books, and those of your brother.

Voilà vos livres et ceux de votre frère.

Those who think ; *ceux que croient*.

The particle *là* is added to *ceux, celles*, when they are not followed by a genitive, or *qui, que*, or any of their cases.

Take those ; *prenez ceux là, or celles là*.

III. By *ce-là* coming with the verb *to be*, accompanied with a substantive.—If a question is asked, *ce-là* is put after *être* ; but, if the sentence is affirmative, *être* then comes between *ce* and *là* ; as

Are those your sentiments ? *sont-ce là vos sentiments ?*

Those are the sentiments of the King my master.

Ce sont-là les sentiments du Roi mon maître.

R U L E XIV.

This is rendered as follows :

I. By *cette* before a noun feminine ; by *ce* before a noun masculine, beginning with a consonant ; and by *cet*, when it begins with a vowel, or an *h* mute ; as

This man ; *cet homme*.—This book ; *ce livre*.—This house ; *cette maison*.—This bird ; *cet oiseau*.—This sword ; *cette épée*.

II. By *celui-ci, celle-ci*, when it relates to a noun mentioned before ; as

I have two watches to sell ; buy this : it is very good ; *J'ai deux montres à vendre ; achetez celle-ci : elle est fort bonne*.

III. By *ceci*, when the word *thing* may be put after it, and when it comes after *all*.

I have done this, this morning ; *J'ai fait ceci, ce matin*

It is also often rendered by *ce*, or *voici*, before *to be* when it does not relate to a noun mentioned before and, if a question is asked, *ci* must be added to *ce*.

These is rendered by *ce* before *to be*, followed by substantive ; by *ces* before nouns plural ; and by

ceux

ceux-ci, celles-ci, when not accompanied with any noun ; as

These are the best ; *ceux-ci sont les meilleurs.*

These things ; *ces choses.*

I love these best ; *J'aime mieux ceux-ci, ou celles-ci.*

These are the reasons on which I ground my pretensions ; *ce sont les raisons sur lesquelles je fonde mes prétentions.*

The former, and the latter, are rendered into French by *ceux-la, ceux-ci, celles-là, celles-ci*, fem.

Note. *That* is, in the sense of *there is*, is commonly rendered by *voilà*.

That (in the sense of *in order to, for to, with a design*) is rendered by *afinque, pourque*, and the next verb must be put in the subjunctive, or else by *afin de*, with the infinitive.

So that is made by *désorte que, de manière que, de façon que*.

Of that is *dequoi* in the sense of, *of what*. *To that*, is *à quoi* in the sense of *to what*.

E X E R C I S E S.

(See RULES I, II, and III.)

She who dances, plays, and sings so well. Who told you to ? The girl with whom he is in love, is a milliner. Whom are they speaking of ? The person they speak of, is Mr. Wall, the ironmonger. The lady to whom he spoke, is my aunt's sister. The lady he spoke to. They whom the house belongs to. The woman whom he loves, and without whom he cannot be happy. I know whom he has invited ; whom will he invite ? Whom did you see ? The person I saw and spoke to. The minister in whom he confided, betrayed him. Whom was he with ? The Prince I serve is courageous.

(See RULE IV.)

The tower, which fell down yesterday, is very far from the house which I bought last week. Which of you has the most courage ? Which of the sisters do you think is the prettiest ? I know which you will choose. The hill on which we were, is fifty feet high. The room which he was in. I know which houses you mean. Which coat will you put on next.

next Sunday? Which is the best grammar? The King would establish an uniformity of sentiments among his subjects, which is impossible. The thing in which we are the most mistaken. The book which my father sent me. The reasons for which he was banished. The trees which bear the best fruit. Which pears do you like? Which is the longest day in the year? A letter was received last week from France, by which we learn. The stick with which I knocked him down.

(See RULES V, and VI.)

The flowers you sent me. The reasons which prompted him to it. The watch you sold is very good. The house in which I live. The dangers to which he was exposed. The felicity at which all men aim. The country from which I come. The cities through which he passed. Such are the proofs from which I conclude. The room he was in was large. The country I come from, is the most famous in Europe. The causes which his misfortunes are attributed to. The shameful means, by which flatterers insinuate themselves into the favour of the great. The dangers we have seen and escaped, are incredible. The city he took his name from. The misery to which they are reduced.

(See RULES VII, VIII, and IX.)

Religion, of which they always speak with contempt. The bottle, of which the neck was long and narrow. Sheep, to the fleece of which men are beholden for their clothing. The tower, on the top of which there was an observatory. Which did you speak of? Which grammar do you make use of? Here is a book; whose is it? it is my father's. Narbal, under whose care I was. The gentleman in whose gardens we were. The lady, whose husband is a lawyer. The house is fine; whose is it? it is her's. To which lady did he write? Diseases, to which we are liable. The science to which he applies the most. The objection he answered to. The business he had been brought up to. The pleasures to which he was inclined, are pernicious.

(See RULE X.)

What surprises me most, is his impudence. What we saw the most remarkable, is a golden statue. What the son proposed was unreasonable. She knows in what the difficulty consists. He beat me, and I know for what. Did he tell you what house he was in? What book was you reading?

What

What dangers have they escaped? What makes you angry? What are they writing? What said your father, when he heard it? What is pleasure? What is the fruit you like best? See what every man does, what wickedness he commits. What you said was true; but what vexed me, was to see him in such a passion. What sort of people are the Arabs? Do you know what to do? What day was it? What was the character of Henry the Eighth? Does he know what to make it with? What made him cry?

(See RULE XI.)

What book do you speak of? What vices was he inclined to? What are you speaking of? What was the first man made of? It is what he complains of. He consented to what was proposed to him. What does he apply himself to? to what is useful to him. She always gives the preference to what he likes. One ought to prefer what is useful, to what is only for pleasure and ornament. What crimes was he accused of? What person did he send it to? When I consider to what dangers and temptations we are exposed. I know what crimes he is guilty of. Be attentive to what he says to her. To what pass are things come. It is hard to know what a man is. I know what he applies himself to.

(See RULE XII.)

The man that feareth and worshippeth God. The woman that my brother married. The trees that bear good fruit. The plan that was proposed. The house I sold. She that I recommended to him. Shew me that book and that letter. I will tell that bird. Give me that. What hat shall I send her? send her that which I bought yesterday. The party of the court, and that of the Prince of Condé, were so weak. That is what I thought; is that what you thought? Is that the King? Which cane will he buy? which you will. I told him he was poor; that vexed him so much, that he gave me a slap on the face.

Is that lady a widow? yes, she is. Was that the opinion of the Judges? Will that man do it? That will be fine when finished. Your hat is fine; but that I bought yesterday is finer.

(See RULES XIII, and XIV.)

Those books are dear. These apples are good. I saw your father's gardens, and those of her uncle. Are those your books? Are those pears good? Those are the arms he

he made use of. This house is Mr. Market's, but that is mine. That house is larger than this. This tree is old; I will cut it this year. Let us taste of this wine, and of this beer. Your sword is longer than this. I will give you a blow with this, if you vex me. These ships were taken from the French. Do you choose those or these. These are your very words. Those horses are old; but these are young. Are those yours? Is this the bird that sings so well? This was a snare, and he was caught in it.

GENERAL EXERCISES.

Who are the worst children? they who lie, swear, steal, despise God, and break his holy commandments. A jackdaw picked up once the feathers of peacocks which were moulting, and deckt himself with them: quite proud of this foreign ornament, he slighted those of his own species, and quitted them: he intruded himself among the peacocks, but these knowing him, drove him away. The nosegay which I sent her. The promise he made her. Children say what they do; old people, what they have done; and fools, what they intend to do. If we consider, that the world is more apt to censure than to applaud. The law, by which females are excluded from the throne of France. How is that part of the heaven called where the sun rises? There is the gentleman who gave you that rose, that smells so well. What house is that? Whom have you been visiting? Which of all the King's virtues is that which deserves the preference? What pleases you displeases me; for you hate what I like, and I love what you hate. Do good to those who hate you, and to them that love you. What is the finest thing in the world? What has he sent them? What are men before God? What is pleasure? What will be our fate? Which is the largest city in England? that which you see there. What news will you tell me? The God they worshipped. I told him in what he was wrong.

Talents that are useful, are the most necessary; but those which serve for pleasure are the best rewarded. Which of these two guineas do you think is the heaviest; this or that? It is difficult to tell which is the tallest, he or I. Which house was he in? In that which your father had sold him. Of all felicities, that which the blessed enjoy in heaven, is the only one to which one ought to aspire. If you apply to what is good, I will love you, and God will bless you, which

is more desirable. What does he aspire to? to what conduces to glory. The means they made use of, are shameful. Which are the best pears of your garden? those you see on that tree. By what means have you acquired that quality, without which all other talents are useless? The crime he was punished for, is horrid. The mountain which I saw, and whose top is always covered with snow. The man that he means, is tall and thin. Can you say that by heart?

The house I bought, and that I sold, are quite new. Whose dog is that? which? this? no; that. The hill, from which we discovered the enemy, is a thousand feet high. It is said he committed that murder, that he might the sooner enjoy the money, she had hoarded up for him. Fortune, to the caprice of which he owed all his success. But what has set them at variance? what she told you this morning. It is what he is very much addicted to. I came to see what it was. We gave bread, meat, and beer, to all those we knew. So that three months after his defeat, his army was more numerous than before. He made her cry; that vexed me very much. What does he meddle with? Whose books are those? they are mine. Whose cane is this? it is the gentleman's. What is a substantive? This watch, and that he gave you, are very good. The science to which he applies, takes up all his time. Rules shew what nouns require an article, and in what circumstances. The man you mean, is six feet high; but the man he speaks of, is seven feet ten inches. What makes the bird? said the bat to the weazle? Whom did she want? What harm had this pigeon done thee? said the fowler to the hawk; thy own reasons condemn thee: thou shalt die. Having said so, he killed him. I prefer this wine to that. The misery to which she was reduced, was such. He entered the room with a drawn sword, which frightened her so much, that she fainted away. What is he proud of? Who has created all these different bodies, which form altogether what is called the universe. That is the lady, whose adventure I was telling you, last night. I study nature, and all that she offers to my eyes.

Henry the Seventh, King of England, was buried in a chapel he had built in Westminster-Abbey, and which goes still by his name. The most remarkable law that was enacted in this reign, was that by which the nobility were allowed to alienate their estates, which was forbidden before. What
a comical

a comical sort of a King is that, said the frogs? what is he good for? I took him for what he is. Do you know what to do with it? The bad measures he took for that, made him miscarry. The question in which we are all concerned, is this; in which of these two lives had you rather be happy? The end for which men were created. That was the epoch of the true liberty of this country. You may put it to what use you please. These are her very words. Those are the expressions he made use of, in answer to a great project of innovation in the finances, which had been presented to him. What hurts the King's affairs the most, is the misunderstanding among the general officers, What will your father and mine say, when they hear that you have deviated from those rules they had prescribed to you, and from those honest principles you were enjoined to adhere to all your life. Are those the occupations a man of sense ought to employ his time in? Do you know whom he followed? What is that small number of years that make up the longest life! That country has rich mines of gold, silver, emeralds, and diamonds. I admire the policy of France. They elected for King, Numa Pompilius, a Sabine by birth, and a man of distinguished merit. He asked him what his horses and his dogs stood him in a year. Do you know what it costs him? I do not understand what he did it for. What makes you angry?

C H A P. IX.

No, Not, None, Nobody, No Man, Neither, Nor;
Are rendered as follows:

No,

I. By *non*, in answer to questions, and at the end of a sentence; as—Is he coming? *vient-il?*—No; *non*.

Tell me yes, or no; *dites moi oui, ou non*.

But if it is preceded by a verb, it is *que non*; and yes, is *qu'oui*.

He asked me if I had seen him; I told him no.

Il me demanda si je l'avois vu; je lui dis que non.

II. By *ne point* between a verb and a noun at the beginning of a sentence; and in the sense of *not at all*, *not one*, it is made by *aucun, aucune*, with *ne* before the verb.

Note. *Point* requires *de* before the next noun, and is placed after the verb; whereas *ne* comes before the verb, and immediately after the nominative; as

I have no money; *Je n'ai point d'argent.*

He has received no news from Italy.

Il n'a point reçu de nouvelles d'Italie.

She has no pleasure in this country.

Elle n'a aucun plaisir dans ce pays.

No officer would obey; *aucun officier ne voulut obeir.*

There is no appearance of war.

Il n'y a aucune apparence de guerre.

We sometimes use *nul* instead of *aucun* at the beginning of a sentence: it implies a stronger denial.

No more—By *ne plus*, or *ne pas davantage*, with this difference: *ne plus* must be always used in the middle of a sentence, before a substantive, and *pas davantage* in answer to questions: in other cases they are used indifferently. Observe, *ne* is placed before the verb, and *plus*, *pas plus*, or *pas davantage* after it. They require *de* before the next substantive; as

The cow is old; she gives no more milk.

La vache est vieille; elle ne donne plus de lait.

Give me nuts; *donnez moi des noisettes.*

I have no more; *Je n'en ai pas davantage.*

Do you chuse any more meat? *souhaitez vous davantage de viande?*—No more, Sir; *pas davantage, Monsieur.*

And by *ne pas plus*, when it comes in a sentence with *than*;* *pas* is placed between the verb and the participle in compound tenses, and *plus* after.

If I had no more money than sense.

Si je n'avois pas plus d'argent que d'esprit.

If he had had no more experience than I.

S'il n'avoit pas eu plus d'experience que moi.

Not;

I. By *ne pas*, or *ne point*, with verbs; *ne* is placed before the verb, *pas*, or *point*, after it: in the compound tenses it comes between the auxiliary and the participle.

* *Ne* comes before the verb.

I don't love him ; *je ne l'aime pas.*

I have not seen him ; *je ne l'ai pas vu.*

But if the verb is in the present of the infinitive, *ne pas*, *ne point*, are placed together before it.

Not to deceive you ; *pour ne pas vous tromper.*

Note. *Pas* must be used instead of *point* before adverbs.

Point has a stronger negative force than *pas*.

He had not money enough.

Il n'avoit pas assez d'argent.

II. By *non*, at the end of a sentence, and before the adverb *only* at the head of a sentence ; by *non pas*, or *non point*, after *but* ; and by *que non* after a verb at the end of a sentence ; as

Ask him whether he will come or not.

Demandez lui s'il viendra ou non.

Will he come ? I believe not.

Viendra-t-il ? je crois que non.

I not only saw him, but I spoke to him.

Non seulement je le vis, mais je lui parlai.

Observe, The following words require *ne* before the verb ; the three first govern the subjunctive.

<i>De peur que</i>	{	lest, for fear,	{	<i>Gueres</i>	{	not much, but a
<i>De crainte que</i>				<i>Fama</i>		little.
<i>A moins que</i>				<i>is</i>		never (not ever).
		unless.				

Note. *Not* is made by *ne* without *pas*, after the following verbs :

Saurois (cannot)—*Savoir* (to know), denoting doubt or uncertainty of mind ; as

I cannot walk ; *je ne saurois marcher.*

I don't know whether he will come.

Je ne sais s'il viendra.

He cannot walk ; *il ne sauroit marcher.*

Oser (to dare)—*Pouvoir* (to be able) ; but *pas* is used if a question is asked, with the two last ; as

I dare not tell it him ; *je n'ose le lui dire.*

Not being able to write himself.

Ne pouvant ecrire lui-meme.

III. By *non pas*, *non point*, in answer to questions, and at the head of the second part of a sentence ; but, before participles active, *ne pas*, or *point*, must be used.

Pas, or *point*, is generally left out in many good authors in the second part of a sentence ; as

I would not go with him, not because I do not love his company ; *je ne voulais pas aller avec lui, non point parceque je n'aime pas sa compagnie.*

He did it to please you, and not to vex you.

Il le fit pour vous plaire, & non pas pour vous faire de la peine.

I wanted money, and not receiving any from my father ; *j'avois besoin d'argent, & n'en recevant point de mon pere.*

Note. *That*, coming after *not*, governs the next verb in the subjunctive in French, and is rendered by *que*.

I don't believe it ; not that the thing is impossible.

Je ne le crois pas ; non que la chose soit impossible.

None ;

I. By *aucun*, *aucune*, *ne*, *point*, *nul*.

Aucun is used before genitives, either expressed or understood ; at the head of a sentence ; and in the sense of *nobody*, *not one*, it requires *ne* before the next verb it is accompanied with, and *de* before the next adjective, or participle.

Ne point is never used at the head of a sentence, and does not deny so strongly as *aucun* ; *ne* is placed before the verb, and *point* after it.

It is used in the sense of *not any*.

Nul is seldom used but at the head of a sentence, when we speak in general without any reference to what precedes ; as

None of the Judges was against it.

Aucun des Juges ne s'y opposa.

I saw none killed nor wounded.

Je n'en ai vu aucun de tué ni de blessé.

If she asks you for money, tell her you have none.

Si elle vous demande de l'argent, dites lui que vous n'en avez point.

Neither,

Neither, Nor ;

I. By *ni* before nouns, pronouns, and infinitives ; but if the verb is in any other mood, *neither* is then *ne*, and *nor*, *ni ne* : *ni* requires *ne* before the foregoing verb, but *ni ne* does not.

You neither eat nor drink ; *vous ne mangez ni ne buvez.*

I can neither drink nor eat.

Je ne saurois ni boire ni manger.

He was neither a lawyer nor a parson.

Il n'étoit ni avocat ni ministre.

I love neither to play nor to dance.

Je n'aime ni à jouer ni à danser.

II. *Neither*, denoting two persons or things, is rendered by *ni l'un, ni l'autre*, with *ne* before the verb ; the feminine is *ni l'une, ni l'autre* * ; as

Neither of them knows it ; *ni l'un ni l'autre ne le sait.*

III. When *neither* comes at the end of a sentence, and when it comes after *nor*, not accompanied with a verb, it is rendered by *non plus* ; as

The arms would work no more neither.

Les bras ne voulurent plus travailler non plus.

I don't believe him, nor you neither.

Je ne le crois pas, ni vous non plus.

Nobody, *personne*—Not one, *pas un*, or *une*, require *ne* before the foregoing verb, and *de* before the next participle, or adjective ; as

I saw nobody wounded ; *je ne vis personne de blessé.*

Not one took notice of her.

Pas un ne fit attention à elle.

Not one is also rendered by *aucun*, chiefly before or after a genitive : it requires *ne* before the verb ; as

Not one of the Judges was against him.

Aucun des Juges ne fut contre lui.

No man, in the sense of *nobody*, is also rendered by *personne* ; as

No man can boast of being perfect.

Personne ne peut se vanter d'être parfait.

Verbs denoting *fear*, require also *ne* before the next verb, which must be put in the subjunctive in French,

* *Of them* is not expressed in French after *neither*.

EXERCISES.

E X E R C I S E S.

I did not see there idle and curious men, who go and seek news in public places, as in the cities of Greece. I am not a Roman, and I would not say that I was. Astarbé fearing that Narbal would discover her imposture to the King, sent him an order to get Telemachus embarked, that he might not be seen in the city any more. His father left him no fortune. The Duke of Marlborough was a negociator, and a General, always successful; no private man ever had a power and a reputation so extensive.

I asked him if he would come with me; he told me, no. She has no reason to be dissatisfied with me. I have no hope. She will give you no more money. I shall play no more. I will drink no more. Will you not take me there? I would not tell him whether I was married or not. He not only sent her cloaths and money. I took a post-chaise for fear I should be too late. He had no money. He will not come, unless he is sent for. Not knowing what to do. They dared not approach him. The King not being able to extricate himself from the difficulties he was involved in. We do not know all that our passions make us do. Did he not dare to attack him? I do not know what he means. Don't you know what is said of you? I had come to assist him, and not to do him any hurt. I am afraid that he is dead. I cannot do it neither. There is no law so openly violated, as that by which our Redeemer commands us to forgive injuries. Nobody in France had more reputation than he. What effect had these representations? none. Has he not seen you? Has nobody been here? not that I know of. I am no more what I was. He asked me if that was my sword; I answered him, yes. Will you see him no more? History is a witness, and not a flatterer.

I wanted money, and not knowing how to get any. Has he money? no, Sir, he has none: what has he done with it? I do not know. I dare not tell it him, lest he should scold me. She will not see me, not that she don't like me, but that she may not displease her father.

None of them deserved that honour. Nobody would give me what I wanted. Not one of us was wounded or taken. I am a slave to no man. I have not hurt your leg. I make no doubt of it. I don't know where to find her. Be sure, that he don't go out. I did not know that. I cannot pay him, unless I receive money. Adversity neither troubles nor casts him

him down. This world never was more corrupted than it is now. Neither gold nor silver make men happy.

No desire can be found which riches do not assist to gratify. We were ten, but none of us were married. What answer did you send him? I sent him none. He was used not to fear dangers. He thinks that he has no principles of honour. Never take the name of God in vain, for he is a jealous God. He who puts his trust in God will not be deceived. It is said that Cromwell had fifty rooms, and none of his most intimate friends ever knew in which of them* he lay. I never did you any harm, so I hope you will do me none. Was he never heard of afterwards? Was he ever heard of afterwards? He became a most zealous protestant.

I speak of neither of them. He shut the door lest his father should come in. I am afraid that he will not succeed. Take care that nobody sees you. I have no uneasiness of mind, thank God. I have seen a great many men in my life, but I have seen none yet satisfied with their condition. Did they meet nobody? That will not cure him. Will they not believe what she said? She trembles for fear he should die. No man can deny it. When I have wine, I drink some; but when I have none, I go without it. William the Third, King of England, understood all the languages of Europe, but spoke none of them well.

They found no treasure in it, since there was none. If they are vicious, you ought to pity them, not to revile them. He never will repent it. I don't know whom he means. The reasons for which he was banished, were never known. Never have a prime minister, nor a favourite, said Lewis the Fourteenth, to his grandson. A cat had killed a great number of mice in an old house, and those who remained not daring to leave their holes. Though I had been sent back as a Phœnician, yet none of the Phœnicians whom I was with knew me. None of the ministers thought that the King would take upon himself the burden of government. Not one asked him when he would hear them. The factions of Sweden and Moscovy prevailed.

The great are never secure against the vengeance of those to whom they do injustice. Cromwell, that usurper, worthy of a crown, had taken the title of Protector, and not that of King, because the English knew how far the rights of their Kings reached, and did not know the bounds of the au-

* Of them must not be expressed in French.

thority of a Protector; he never encroached upon the privileges the nation was jealous of; he never quartered soldiers in the city of London; he laid no duty that one could complain of; he allowed himself no pleasure, and laid up no treasure. Never do to others, what you would not have done to yourself. The most perfect men have their foibles. One cannot help pitying* him.

It was observed, that nobody took notice of what he said. She is too much indulged, and that makes her so impudent, that one cannot bear her in company. When a man is dead, he is no more thought of. The cow is old; she gives no more milk. I will pray for him no more. My father was not there neither. I desire you to speak to me no more about it. My mother speaks to you, and not to me. He treated him as a general in the pay of France, and not as a sovereign. The arms would act no more neither. What I say, is not by way of self-boasting. The lion not being able to extricate himself from the net into which he had fallen. I wanted money, and he would give me none.

A wood-cutter having lost his hatchet, Mercury took pity on him, and shewing him a golden one, asked him if it was not his: he honestly answered, no. Is it this then? said the God, shewing him a silver one; no, replied he, it is not that neither. The wolf persuaded the crane, that he would not only do her no harm, but would even reward her as he had promised. The pleasure, which is attended with fear, cannot be called a pleasure. The sheep, having no more their dogs to defend them, were devoured by the wolves. Not one would undertake it. Those who were not born rich, may acquire wealth by their diligence and industry. Expect neither complaisance nor humanity from those, who have broke the ties by which nature has united brothers. One cannot tell whether it did not cost France more to conquer that country, than it cost her then to defend it.

* It must be made by the present of the infinitive, with *de* before it.

C H A P. X.

Any, Any Body, Any Thing, Any One, Before, But, Nothing, Only, Unless, and Why,

Are rendered as follows:

I. *Any*, by *aucun, aucune*, in the four following cases:

I. Coming

1. Coming after negations, or the following words, *without, before, than, too, too much*; as

He never was excelled by any of his predecessors.

Il n'a jamais été surpassé par aucun de ses prédécesseurs.

He was found dead in his bed, without any mark of violence; *on le trouva mort dans son lit sans aucune marque de violence.*

2. When it implies *disbelief, uncertainty, wonder, ignorance, unwillingness, repugnance, denial*; and when it is taken in a negative sense; as

Is there any appearance of war?

Y a-t-il aucune apparence de guerre?

For fear of giving him any subject of complaint.

De peur de lui donner aucun sujet de plainte.

Is there any nation that could live without laws?

Y a-t-il aucune nation que pût vivre sans loix?

Annibal formed the boldest project that ever any General had dared to conceive; *Annibal forma le projet le plus hardi que jamais aucun General eût osé concevoir.*

3. After verbs denoting *to forbid, to refuse, to hinder*; as

He hindered the Queen from meddling with any state affairs; *il empecha la Reine de se mêler d'aucune affaire d'état.*

4. Before a genitive expressed or understood, in the sense of *any one*; but in the sense of *some one, or one's*, we use *quelqu'un, quelqu'une, quelques uns, quelque's unes*, before a genitive; and *quelque* in the sense of *some* before a nominative and accusative; but, if there is a negation, it must be made by *aucun, aucune*; as

If any of them was bold enough to do it.

Si aucun d'eux étoit assez hardi pour le faire.

If I was acquainted with any of these gentlemen.

Si je connoissois quelques uns de ces messieurs.

Is there any appearance of war?

Y a-t-il quelque apparence de guerre?

When any officer had the honour to speak to him.

Quand quelque officier avoit l'honneur de lui parler.

If I had any hope; *si j'avois quelque espérance.*

I do not know any of your children.

Je ne connois aucun de vos enfans.

5. By *tout, toute*, in the sense of *every*; as

Any officer who distinguished himself, was sure to be rewarded; *tout officier qui se distinguoit étoit sur d'être récompensé.*

It is what happens to any Prince badly advised.

C'est ce qui arrive à tout Prince mal conseillé.

Any is sometimes rendered by the genitive of the next noun: this happens when it may be turned by *some*, and is followed by a noun.

Has the King any children? *le Roi a-t-il des enfans?*

Any one is rendered by *tout le monde*, in the sense of *every*, or *any body*; and by *quiconque*, in the sense of *whosoever*, *whomsoever*; as

His purse is always open to any one that is poor and honest; *sa bourse est toujours ouverte à quiconque est pauvre & honnête.*

His purse is open to any one.

Sa bourse est ouverte à tout le monde.

Note. After *quiconque*, *that*, or *who*, is not expressed in French.

Any is also rendered by *en*, when it stands for a noun.

Any Body;

I. By *personne* in negative sentences, or when it implies *disbelief*, *doubt*, *ignorance*, *denial*, *surprise*, *wonder*; and after the following words, *without*, *before*, *too*, *than*; as

I never saw any body like you.

Je n'ai jamais vu personne comme vous.

Did ever any body see a spirit?

Personne a-t-il jamais vu un esprit?

Is there any body in the world that esteems you more than I do? *y a-t-il personne au monde qui vous estime plus que moi?*

II. By *quiconque*, in the sense of *whosoever*, *any one*; as

They had orders to kill any body they should meet.

Ils avoient ordre de tuer quiconque ils rencontreroient.

He

He has orders to arrest any body that shall pass by.

Il a ordre d'arreter quiconque passera par là.

Note. *That, who*, are not expressed in French after *quiconque*.

III. By *quelqu'un*, in the sense of *somebody*.

It is also often rendered by *qui que ce soit*, and by *tout le monde*, in the sense of *every body, any one, any body whatever*; as—If you meet any body on the road that knows you; *si vous recontrez quelqu'un sur le chemin qui vous connoisse*.

Tell any body that asks for me, that I am gone out.

Dites qui que ce soit qui me demande, que je suis sorti.

Inquire in Pall-Mall; any body will tell you where I live; *informez vous dans Pall Mall; tout le monde vous dira ou je demeure.*

Any Thing;

I. By *rien* in negative sentences, or implying *disbelief, doubt, denial, ignorance, forbidding, hinderance*; and after the following words, *without, before, too*; as

The Jews could not charge our Saviour with any thing that deserved death; *les Juifs ne pouvoient accuser notre Seigneur de rien qui méritât la mort.*

I doubt if any thing can make a greater impression on men than miracles; *je doute que rien puisse faire plus d'impression sur les hommes que les miracles.*

Is there any thing more wonderful than the virtue of the loadstone? *y a-t-il rien de plus admirable que la vertu de l'aimant?*—Note. If the verb in English is in the present or the future of the indicative, it must be put in the present of the subjunctive in French, and in the preterite, if the verb in English is in any other tense.

II. By *tout ce*, in the sense of *whatever, every thing*; as—He does any thing that he is bid; *il fait tout ce qu'on lui ordonne.*

III. By *quelque chose*, in the sense of *something*; as If you have any thing of consequence to tell him.

Si vous avez quelque chose de conséquence à lui dire.

Before;

I. By *que ne* before verbs, when it can be turned by *unless, but, when, after*. This happens chiefly in negative sentences: *que* is placed before the nominative,

M

and

and *ne* after it. The verb must be put in the subjunctive mood ; as

I will not go there before they send for me.

Je ne veux pas y aller qu'ils ne m'envoient chercher.

II. By *que* after *seldom*, *scarce*, *hardly*, and after verbs signifying to *refuse*, to *forbid*, to *declare* ; as

The King was hardly landed, before he heard that his army had been defeated ; *le roi fut à peine débarqué qu'il apprit la défaite de son armée.*

III. By *avant que de* before infinitives, and by *avant que* before the nominative of a verb, which must then be put in the subjunctive.

If the nominative is a pronoun personal, the verb is generally put in the present of the infinitive in French ; as—Do that, before your father comes ; *faites cela, avant que votre pere vienne.*—Consider before you undertake any thing ; *considerez avant que de rien entreprendre.*

IV. By *avant* before nouns when it relates to time, of which it shews the priority, order, or succession. In this sense it is always opposite to *after* ; as

Before the creation of the world.

Avant la création du monde.

V. By *devant*, when it denotes local station, place, or situation of persons, things, &c. In this sense it is always opposite to *behind* ; as

There is a large tree before his house.

Il-y-a un gros arbre devant sa maison.

VI. By *auparavant*, at the end of a sentence, when it does not denote local station, order, or rank of persons, or things, but relates only to time ; that is, in the sense of *before now*, *above* ; as

I had told you so before ; *je vous l'avois dit auparavant.*

But ;

I. By *qui ne* in a negative sentence, if it stands immediately before a verb, without a nominative between, and by *que ne*, if there is one : *que* is placed before the nominative, and *ne* after it ; the verb, in both cases, must be put in the subjunctive, in the same manner as beforementioned ; as—There is nobody but knows it ; *il n'y a personne qui ne le sache.*

I make

I make no doubt but my father will come.

Je ne doute point que mon pere ne vienne.

II. By *ne que*, when it can be turned by *only*; *ne* is placed before the verb, and *que* after it; as—I make but one meal a day; *je ne fais qu'un repas par jour.*

He has but two children; *il n'a que deux enfans.*

I gave him but part of it.

Je ne lui en donnai qu'une partie.

III. By *que*, when it comes after a negation, or a negative word, and when it signifies *except*.

There can be no other God but he who has created us.

Il ne peut y avoir d'autre Dieu que celui qui nous a créés.

Fools will believe nothing but when it is too late.

Les fous ne veulent rien croire que lors qu'il est trop tard.

They were all sick but me; *ils étoient tous malades que moi.*

When *but* does not fall under any one of the above rules, it is rendered by *mais*. This happens when it stands in the beginning, or in the second part of a sentence; as.

I would have given him more money, but I had but 5 shillings; *Je lui aurois donné plus d'argent, mais je n'avois que 5 shellins.*

Only;

Is made by *ne que*, when it can be turned by *but*, or when it is taken in a negative sense; *ne* is placed before the verb, and *que* after it; as

I wanted only three guineas; (*i. e.*) I wanted but three guineas; *je n'avois besoin que de trois guinées.*

We spent only five shillings; (*i. e.*) We spent but five shillings; *nous ne depensâmes que cinq shellins.*

In other cases it is rendered by *seulement*, *uniquement*; as—If I had only two guineas; *si j'avois seulement deux guinées.*

Only is considered here as an adverb, not as an adjective. It is always an adjective when it has an article before it.

Nothing;

I. By *on ne*, when it stands before a verb passive, followed by *but*. The verb must be turned by the active

voice ; as—Nothing was taken from him but his sword ;
on ne lui prit que son épée.

II. By *on ne rien* before a verb passive, not followed by *but* ; *on ne* comes before the verb, and *rien* after it ; but, if a question is asked, *on* is put after the verb, though *ne* remains before. The verb is also turned by the active voice ; as—Nothing was taken from him ; *on ne lui prit rien.*—Was nothing taken from him ? *ne lui prit on rien ?*

III. By *rien ne* before verbs that are not passive ; as Nothing pleases him ; *rien ne lui plait.*—Nothing vexes him so much ; *rien ne lui fait tant de peine.*

Nothing can save his life but the change of air.

Rien ne peut lui sauver la vie que le changement d'air.

IV. By *ne rien* after verbs not followed by *but* ; *ne* is placed before the verb, and *rien* after it, except when the verb is in the infinitive : *ne rien* comes then before it ; the pronoun, if there is one, is placed between ; as He does nothing ; *il ne fait rien.*

My father said nothing ; *mon père ne dit rien.*

I was resolved to say nothing to him.

J'étois résolu de ne lui rien dire.

V. By *ne* after verbs followed by *but*, except when it is followed by the word *when*, and in a few other cases ; it is then *ne rien*, according to the fourth rule ; as

He does nothing but play ; *il ne fait que jouer.*

He does nothing but when the master is present.

Il ne fait rien que quand le maître est présent.

VI. By *rien* after prepositions, and when it stands by itself, or comes after *and*, or *but*.

I do it for nothing ; *Je le fais pour rien.*

What do you say ? *que dites vous ?*—Nothing ; *rien.*

I expect a guinea from my father, but nothing from my uncle ; *J'attends une guinée de mon père, mais rien de mon oncle.*

Unless ;

By *que ne* ; (*que* comes before the nominative, and *ne* after it) *si ne*, à moins *que ne* ; à moins *de* ; *que ne*, is never used but in negative sentences, in the sense of *before* ;

before ; *à moins de* is used before infinitives ; *si ne*, *à moins que ne*, are used in negative or affirmative sentences. Observe, that *si*, *à moins que*, are placed before the nominative, and *ne* after it ; the verb must be put in the subjunctive ; as

I will not lend him money, unless he promises me to return it next week ; *Je ne veux pas lui prêter de l'argent, qu'il ne me promette de me le rendre la semaine prochaine.*

I will not go there unless she sends for me.

Je n'y irai pas à moins qu'elle ne m'envoie chercher.

Why ;

Is rendered by *d'où vient que*, *pourquoi*, *que ne**, with this difference :—The two first are used with, or without negations, and seem to require an answer ; the last is never used but in negative sentences, when a question is asked : the negation must not then be expressed in French. *D'où vient que* is never used but when a question is asked, and it requires the nominative to be placed before the verb. *Pourquoi* is used, whether a question is asked or not ; as

Why do you come so late ?

D'où vient que vous venez si tard ? or *Pourquoi venez vous si tard ?*

Why don't you go faster ? *que n'allez vous plus vite ?* or *D'où vient que vous n'allez pas plus vite ?* or *Pourquoi n'allez vous pas plus vite ?*

Why do you not speak French ? *que ne parlez vous François ?*

E X E R C I S E S.

(See Any.)

He never engaged in any court-intrigues, nor even gave offence to any party. Francis the First, King of France, could have reduced the Dutchy of Milan, without any difficulty. That city was incapable of making any resistance. Vanity, a passion more predominant than any other. If I had any pleasure in this country, I would stay in it two years longer. Did this Prince perform any remarkable action ? The King was so highly incensed, that he would not return

* *Que* is placed before the nominative, and *ne* after it.

them any answer. Did any of them deserve that favour? Had Henry the Eighth any other foreign war? Was the reign of Queen Anne distinguished by any other remarkable events? Any soldier that was found out of the camp, was hanged immediately. I would go there, if I had any friend to accompany me. Conquerors are like inundations, that lay waste all they meet with. What is the earth, when compared to other planets! The King sent them word, that, if they dared to propose to him any terms that could hurt his dignity.

(See *Any Body.*)

He is more fit for that place than any body that I know. Did you wait for any body? She said no harm of any body. If you saw any body in distress, would you relieve them? I am too polite to affront any body. They wanted to get into the play-house before any body. If you inquire after me in the Hay-Market, any body will tell you where I live. Does any body know where he is? Did any body ever doubt seriously of the existence of God? Has any body a right to ask me such a question? Any body may say the same. The middle part of that mountain is covered with a cloud, and the top with snow.

(See *Any Thing.*)

I never saw any thing like it. We will have for dinner any thing you like. He always opposes any thing that is proposed for your advantage. She is frightened at any thing she sees. Consider, before you undertake any thing. I spend whole days with them without saying any thing. If you had any thing good for dinner, I would stay. Never do any thing that can displease your master. I asked him if he had ate any thing this morning; he told me, no. Did he perform any thing that deserved the thanks of the House of Commons? She applauds any thing he says. He has not drunk any thing to-day. Has he drunk any thing to-day? I was forbid to say any thing about it. She hinders me from doing any thing to serve you. Is there any thing more disagreeable than a proud man? Count Desalleurs, the French Ambassador.

(See *Before.*)

I will not undertake any thing before I have asked him his opinion. I never undertake any thing before I have duly considered it. Consider, before you undertake any thing. Do your exercise before it is too late. Are you before your brother

brother in Latin ? When they came before the Judge, they were asked, if they had ever committed any crime before ; they answered, not before that time. The Queen was hardly landed, before she heard her army had been defeated. I will set out before it is late. If I had thought on it before. We will not begin before they are come. They will not drink tea before these ladies are gone, and they won't go before five o'clock. They were scarce entered into the forest before they saw a great bear, who was coming towards them.

(See *But.*)

There was no officer of experience but foresaw the consequence of it. The true causes of war are seldom known, but by Princes and their ministers. He never goes out but he catches cold. This is but a fiction ; for there cannot be any other God but he who has created us. There is nobody but knows it. I have been but once to the play this year. But King John, unwilling to surrender himself a prisoner to any body but to the Prince of Wales, asked where the Prince was. They were very willing to receive him as a General, but not as a King. He had but three servants with him. Jugurtha, who had no hopes but in the change of the Roman General. Your garden is but an hundred yards long. He staid but a week in London.

(See *Only.*)

I wanted only three guineas. He only drank a glass of it. We have only spent five shillings this week. That wall is only twenty feet high, and three thick. He applies himself only to what will be useful to him in his trade. That General was very fit for enterprizes which only require courage. The wolfswore, that he would not only do her no harm, but he would even reward her, as he promised. To whom did he give rewards ? Only to those who excelled in navigation. Most of those solemnities are only for the eyes and ears.

(See *Nothing.*)

Nothing can make fools content. That whole reign, says Plutarch, saw nothing so shocking, nor that excited more horror. Nothing was talked of but victories. Nothing can be done without money. Nothing can be done but that. Does he believe nothing of it. I want every thing, but you want nothing. As nothing like it had ever been seen in any part of Europe before. - What does he apply himself to ? to nothing. Nothing is more contagious than example. Nothing

was

was seen but soldiers in the field, seditions among the people, negotiations among the chiefs of parties. They eat nothing there but roots and fruits. I find nothing curious in it. What did he say to you? nothing but what you know. Nothing of what belongs to convenience and luxury, was omitted. What a noise for nothing. Nothing is fixt, nothing is constant among men. They do nothing but play. Do you do it for nothing?

(See *Unless* and *Why*.)

This fable shews, that the remonstrances of fathers and mothers are of no service to their children, unless they give them good examples themselves. A body has no motion, unless it receives it from another. Unless Pygmalion alters his conduct, we shall lose our glory and power. The King will punish me, unless I deliver you into his hands. O great minister, said that Prince, why wast thou not born in my time? Why do you speak French to him? Why don't you speak French to her? I told them why I would not go? Why don't he get up earlier?

GENERAL EXERCISES.

If there was any real virtue in the world, we should not meet with so many false friends. What is necessary to every man in a high office, is not to let any body go away from his presence dissatisfied, and to render himself agreeable to every one that approaches him. Has he given you any thing good? They could not propose any thing more agreeable to me. Her husband was neither before nor afterwards accused of any bad action. Cæsar was hardly entered into the senate, before the conspirators rushed upon him. I never saw any body but said the same. There were few ladies in the room but he knew. Had any body told you of it before? Nothing was undertaken in Flanders during the winter. The fox, who could only lick the outside of the bottle, retired quite ashamed. Why don't you do what your master bade you? What is your opinion? If any Prince, or any minister, find any disagreeable truth in this work, let them remember, that they are accountable to the public for their actions. The King held a council before he left the town. Rank and dignities are but the shadow of true greatness. Lewis the Eleventh did a great deal for the royal authority, but nothing for the happiness of his people. He pays him only once a year. He was only a Captain. Nothing was seen every

every day but new murders and new proscriptions. Can you boast of any thing like it? He thinks that she loves nobody but him. Ancus perceived then, that piety was not the only virtue necessary to a Prince. Of all the nations on the earth, is there any that has no idea of a Supreme Being? There is nobody that knows it. That Vizier was not at* any time the friend of Charles the Twelfth, nor of any Christian Prince, nor of any of their ministers. Had that Prince any other wars?

The Duke of Feuillades, full of ardor and activity, more capable than any body of enterprises which require only courage, but incapable of those which require art, deliberation, and time. Hostilius gave to the people all the lands of the crown, keeping for himself only what he possessed when he was but a private man. Nothing disgraces men more than vanity, a passion more predominant than any other. We have had nothing but storms, tempests, and rains, since Christmas. Nothing is more just than that law. Of all the nations on earth, there is none but has a notion of the Divinity.

I never play but I win. The whole appears but a concealed indigence, or a splendid poverty. A young man ought to do nothing but what he is bid, or allowed. We did nothing criminal. Never make an alliance with any body stronger than yourself. The clemency of Princes is often but policy. There have been but few treaties of peace, but have been the cause of wars. Do you reckon for nothing the immortality that I offer you? That was only a beginning. The senate of Rome refused to listen to any overture of peace before Pyrrhus had evacuated Italy. I never go out before I have washed my hands. Was that Prince beloved by his subjects? yes, more than any one of his predecessors. Telemachus only answered this discourse by tears. The Duke of Buckingham was beheaded without any form of trial. I desire but that favour. They all refused to have any share in so criminal an action. You did nothing but eat and drink. Has he told him nothing of it? Nobody knows any thing of it but he. Neither he, nor any of those who have so much censured Lewis the Fourteenth, can deny, but he was the greatest monarch in Europe till the battle of Blenheim. The King forbids, on pain of death, to give him any assistance. Any body, who has seen him once, will know him again. He

* Dans.

had very little cause to expect any favour from a victorious enemy. That word may be used without any relation to what precedes. Is there any body more fortunate than I? He has nothing but that to offer you. I do not know what to say to him. I don't understand any thing of it neither. He says any thing that comes in his head. Was you ever there before? Has he done nothing criminal? not that I know of. I expected, said Charles, to receive an ambassy from the republic, and nothing from Augustus.

If there was any thing curious in it, I should not wonder to see so many people go to see it, but there is nothing in it that deserves the attention of a man of sense. His soldiers refused to march before they had received their pay. Is there any body that says so? When one has but a little money, one ought to spend it accordingly. He succeeded in any thing he undertook. If I had but a boy and a girl, I could save money; but I have six children who are always ill, and that ruins me. He had received a small present from the Emperor, and nothing from the King of Sweden. Say nothing of it. But none of them said any thing about it.

C H A P. XI.

To before infinitives, is rendered as follows:

I. By *pour*, when it can be turned by *for to*, *in order to*, *with a design*, and generally after the words *too much*, *enough*.

II. By *de*, *à*, after certain verbs, adjectives, and nouns (See them, Chapters II, III, XIX).

E X E R C I S E S.

The minister of state wrote to him, to desire him to come to town, and to bring with him all the state papers. God created us to honour and serve him. He is too polite to refuse a favour to any lady. He is old enough to be her father, yet it is said he is going to be married to her. Endeavour to deserve that honor. She affects to speak French. They were condemned to be hanged. Every body is liable to commit faults. Does she learn to write and read? Has her father forbidden her to speak to me? I have something to do. She will be obliged to do it. She loves to dance and sing. He had invited me to go to see him. I taught him to draw and write. They

They promised me to come. They went to London to see St. Paul's. He loves to sing and to dance.

Give me leave to tell you what I heard. They began to dance. Use yourself to speak French. He said it only to vex me. He had a mind to stay. It was a crime to protect the innocent. People who have nothing to lose. God bids us obey him. Give me time to dress myself. I am not sure of catching him again. She took care to do it well. I cannot pretend to treat you so well. He had the impudence to laugh at me. It would be easy for me to be avenged of thee; but remember, that thou art but an ass. She did not vouchsafe to answer me. I know very well how to secure myself from the danger. They were obliged to do it. He loves to give lessons to others. In vain the unfortunate mother entreated her to return her her young ones; the eagle did not even vouchsafe to listen to her, but the fox went to fetch a firebrand, and set the tree on fire: so that the cruel eagle was obliged to return her her young, to save her own from the danger which threatened them. The cries of the mountain in labour seemed to threaten the universe. I did not dare to speak to him. The best way is to tie a bell round his neck. It is very easy to give advice.

The animals assembled one day to elect a King. She had the boldness to approach him, and to speak to him, as he was going out. Men think to render themselves happy. It was then difficult to decide, which had acquired the most honor, Condé or Turenne. Not satisfied with having excluded Metellus from the consulate, he employed the most shameful means to get him banished from Rome. Those who endeavour to get too much, often ruin themselves by the false measures they take to enrich themselves. They did not dare to quit their holes. The mice met one day to see what they could do to avoid the claws of the cat. As he had nothing to do. Both parties agreed to give hostages; the sheep consented to give their dogs. The children did not fail to go there. Do'st thou dare to compare thyself to me? Does it become any body to praise himself? What has he to do? They cannot abide you any where. If you had any reason to be angry with him. We are all doomed to die. They resolved to attack any body they should meet. He did not come here to do me any good. The frogs begged of Jupiter to give them a King to govern them. That obliged him to run away. Let us learn by this fable, not to judge of things
by

by appearances. I have given him leave to go out. He has all sorts of horses to sell. She could not understand what right he had to be idle. They would force him to work, and he would do nothing. It was resolved in a council of war, to continue the siege of Mons. What is the tract of land we inhabit, but an imperceptible point, with respect to those vast regions of the universe. He had no sooner received this bad news, than he set out to take the command of the army, to repair that loss. The Duke of Orleans, incensed to see that he had been sent to the army only as a Prince of the blood, and not as a General.

C H A P. XII.

Of the impersonals *it is* or *'tis*, *it was*, &c. *must*, *it must*, *should*, *should do*, *there is*, *there are*, *it is needful*, *necessary* or *requisite*.

RULE I.

The impersonal *it is*, *it was*, &c. is rendered by the verb *valoir*, before the adverb *better*, *mieux*; and by the verb *faire* before adjectives denoting *weather*, and before nouns signifying *dearth* or *cheapness* of living.

It is better to work than to starve.

Il vaut mieux travailler que de mourir de faim.

It would be better to acquaint him with it.

Il vaudroit mieux le lui dire.

It is hot; *il fait chaud*.—It was cold; *il se fait froid*.

It is dear living in London.

Il fait cher vivre à Londres.

It is fine weather; *il fait beau tems*.

RULE II.

It, coming with any tense of *to be*, is rendered by *il*, *elle*, *ce*, according to the following observations.

I. By *il* or *elle* before adjectives having no substantive after them; and before the pronouns possessive, *mine*, *thine*, *his*, *her's*, *our's*, *your's*, *their's*, when they are turned by a pronoun personal; also before adjectives having *of the*, *of a*, *of an*, *of*, before them.

Elle is used instead of *il*, when it relates to a noun feminine; as

Take

Take my penknife: it is very good.

Prenez mon canif: il est tres bon.

It was dangerous to go out at night.

Il étoit dangereux de sortir de nuit.

Whose hat is this? it is mine.

A qui est ce chapeau? il est à moi.

It was of the greatest consequence.

Il étoit de la dernière consequence.

II. By *il*, when we speak of time, or of a part of it.

It was ten o'clock; *il étoit dix heures.*

It is time to set out; *il est tems de partir.*

III. *Ce* is used before adjectives, whenever they are accompanied with a noun substantive: before articles, pronouns personal, and the possessives *mon*, *ton*, *son*; and in all cases, except those above-mentioned.

It is a great misfortune; *c'est un grand malheur.*

It was his foible; *c'étoit son foible.*

It would be a pity; *ce seroit dommage.*

It was a rash action; *c'étoit une action téméraire.*

Is it what you thought? *est-ce ce que vous pensiez?*

It is my hat; *c'est mon chapeau.*

Do you know what it is? *savez vous ce que c'est?*

Was it you? *étoit ce vous?*

Is it the maid who told him of it.

C'est la servante qui le lui dit.

It was the greatest misfortune that could happen to her; *c'étoit le plus grand malheur qui pût lui arriver.*

Note. *Etre* coming with *ce* is put in the third person plural, if it is followed by a substantive plural, or by the pronoun *they*, except when a question is asked; for then it must remain in the singular.

It is victories that make treaties.

Ce sont les victoires qui font les traités.

It is they who have done it; *ce sont eux qui l'ont fait.*

Was it the dragoons who attacked the town?

Etoit ce les dragons qui attaquèrent la ville?

It is with, *it was with*, &c. are rendered by *il en est*, *il en étoit*: the next noun must be put in the genitive; as—It is with you as with him; *il en est de vous comme de lui.*

It is with poets as with painters.

Il en est des poetes comme des peintres.

RULE III.

There is, there are, are rendered by *voila*, when one points at or shews something. In other cases they are rendered by *il y a*, and the next noun is then put in the genitive; as

There is your father; *voila votre pere*.—There are women who are not coquettes; *il y a des femmes qui ne sont pas coquettes*.

Is there, are there, are made by *y-a-t-il*.

Are there people foolish enough to believe it?

Y-a-t-il des gens assez fous pour le croire?

RULE IV.

Must, it must, one must, is rendered as follows:

I. By *il faut* before the present of an infinitive passive, which must be turned by the active voice in French, and the nominative in English must be put in the case which the French verb governs, and be placed accordingly.

Children must be whipt when they do not do their duty; *il faut fouetter les enfans quand ils ne font pas leur devoir*.

He must be sent for; *il faut l'envoyer chercher*.

II. By *il faut que* before any other tense; the next verb must then be put in the subjunctive in French, though it is in the indicative in English, and the nominative must be placed after *il faut que*; as

I must go out to day; *il faut que je sorte aujourd'hui*.

My father must set out to-morrow.

Il faut que mon pere parte demain.

He must have been taken; *il faut qu'il ait ete pris*.

When a question is asked, *il* is placed between *faut* and *que*:

Must my father set out to-morrow?

Faut il que mon pere parte demain?

Must I go out to day? *faut il que je sorte aujourd'hui?*

Note. *Que* is put after *Et* in the second part of a sentence, if the first begins with *il faut que*, with the next verb in the subjunctive.

I must

I must go to see him, and tell him what is said of him; *il faut que j'aille le voir, & que je lui dise ce qu'on dit de lui.*

The pronouns personal, especially those of the second and third person, are often left out in French, and the verb is put in the present of the infinitive.

He sent them word that they must submit to necessity.

Il leur manda qu'il falloit se soumettre à la nécessité.

When she saw that she must die.

Quand elle vit qu'il falloit mourir.

This verb is thus conjugated: *il faut, il falloit, il fallut, il faudra, il faudroit, il fâille, fallu.*

III. By the verb *devoir*, in the sense of *ought*, or *ought to be*, according to the nature or course of things; and not in the sense of *necessity of doing*, or *being*; as

Your father must be very glad to see you make such improvements; *votre pere doit etre charmé de voir que vous fassiez de si grands progrès.*

It must be very cold in Russia.

Il doit faire bien froid en Russie.

The study of history must be very useful.

L'étude de l'histoire doit etre fort utile.

R U L E V.

Must have, *one must have*, denoting *want* or *need*, are rendered by *il faut*. The nominative in English must be put in the dative in French, and placed after the other substantive, unless it is a pronoun personal.

That girl must have a husband.

Il faut un mari à cette fille.

She must have a husband; *il lui faut un mari.*

I must have a hat; *il me faut un chapeau.*

One must have money to go to law.

Il faut de l'argent pour plaider.

To be obliged, *to be necessary*, *requisite* or *needful*, in the sense of *must*, are likewise rendered by *il faut, il falloit, &c.* according to the tense they occupy in English.

R U L E VI.

Should is rendered as follows:

I. By the conditional of *devoir* in the sense of *ought*.

You should obey your master.

Vous devriez obeir à votre maitre.

II. By *il faut* at the end of a sentence, or of a part of it. The pronoun that comes before *should*, must not then be expressed in French.

Do your exercise as you should.

Faites votre theme comme il faut.

III. By *si* before a noun, when it can be turned by *if*.*.

Should your father see you with him.

Si votre pere vous voioit avec lui.

It should be, is rendered by *il faut* at the end of a sentence, or a part of it. *Should be*, is made by *il faudroit que*, with the verb in the subjunctive; or by the conditional of *devoir*, with *etre* after it, when it can be turned by *ought to be*; *il faudroit que* is placed before the nominative in French.

Do it as it should be; *faites le comme il faut.*

The room should be longer; *la chambre devroit etre plus longue*; or *Il faudroit que la chambre fut plus longue.*

RULE VII.

Should have, denoting *want* or *need*, is rendered by *il faudroit*; and *should have had*, by *il auroit fallu*. The nominative in English must be put in the dative in French, and placed accordingly.

He should have a better coat.

Il lui faudroit un meilleur habit.

He should have had more money.

Il lui auroit fallu plus d'argent.

Should have, in the sense of *ought to have*, is rendered by the conditional of *avoir*, with the participle *dû* after it; and the next participle passive in English must be rendered by the present of the infinitive active in French.

We should have taken better measures.

Nous aurions dû prendre de meilleures mesures.

They should have been more prudent.

Ils auroient dû etre plus prudents.

* The verb is put in the imperfect.

E X E R C I S E S

Upon IMPERSONALS.

(See RULES I, II, and III.)

It is cold this morning, but it was colder yesterday. It would be better to tell him of it now than to-morrow. It has been very bad weather. It is dark weather. It will be fine this afternoon. It is dearer living in London than in Paris. It is a great pleasure. It was his foible. It will be the ruin of him. It was then difficult to decide which of the two Generals had acquired the most glory. It is a surprising story. It is certain that he has been seen. It is the sailors who took the town. Was it the dragoons who attacked the Queen's regiment of foot? What is it o'clock? It is three. Is it her father who is coming? It is useless to say any more about it. It is what I say. It is what you thought. It is with you as with him. See the house: it is fine. There are people who are never satisfied. There is the horse I bought. Is there any wine in the bottle? There was some, but they have drunk it.

(See RULES IV, and V.)

The book must be sent to night. His arm must be cut off. He must be mad. It must be his fault, for it is not mine. Must they come to-morrow? It must be very hot in Jamaica. The King of Prussia must be old now. I must have pens, paper, and ink. My father must have a new coat. That exercise must be made before five o'clock. The house must be rebuilt. The letters must have been intercepted. Virtue must give a great pleasure to those who practise it. When they saw that they must conquer or die. They must have had powerful friends.

(See RULES VI, and VII.)

You should do what I bid you. He should be upon his guard. Your coat should be two inches longer. Should the French once land in England, they would soon be masters of it. She does not behave as she should. He should have had better troops. He should have a laced hat with his new coat. If they had fought as they should, they would have got the victory. She should have come sooner. Do that exercise as it should be.

G E N E R A L E X E R C I S E S.

Would it not be better to die once for all, than to be in a situation which is worse than death itself? It is not nature

nature alone, but fortune with her, that makes heroes. 'Tis not those who speak most, that speak best. It is what hindered the King from employing him in the siege of Troy. Of all their letters, there is none but breathes a spirit of haughtiness. It is very difficult to make fine pictures and good verses. We must manage fortune as we do health: enjoy it when it is good, and have patience when it is bad. We must eat to live, and not live to eat. Must men cut one another's throats, because they differ in opinion? One should not quit certainty for uncertainty. It is better sometimes to put up with an affront than to resent it. She was obliged to cross on foot a country full of woods and marshes. To know them, one must see them often. I must go to Portsmouth before I go to Bath. It is not courage that fails me now, it is strength. Jupiter answered them, that they should have kept their first form of government. To understand it, one must read it twice. It will be my fault if it is not done as it should. It is with a school as with a state: it cannot subsist without penal laws. It was the sailors who stormed the town. Is it the Americans who have got the victory? Should a spirit of a superior nature alight upon this earth, what would he think of us? That country must have had great resources, or else it could not have withstood so many powers united against it. Children should be corrected when they are disobedient. The King must be obeyed. If it is fine weather to-morrow, I must go to Windsor. The silver spoons must have been stolen. Must the chickens be roasted? The master must have been told of it. It is colder than it was. There were three men hanged, and two pardoned. You should be more polite to ladies. What must he do in so melancholy a situation? 'Tis the same sun that enlightens all nations. It is but too true that we must all die. What immense sums that palace must have cost! He owned the fact when he saw he must die. It is an act of parliament to which he must submit, though a King's son. Should they be proud, because they are rich! She should take physick; that would cure her. There is your house; it is very fine. We should talk very little of ourselves. A man who behaves with civility and politeness, must necessarily please. We will do whatever shall be necessary for that. So that it is necessary to know the rules of the French language, to express the following sentences. What wife must one marry not to repent it? It is a lamentable thing to see, that boys who
have

have much wit, and a great capacity for learning, take so little pains. It is to be believed, that these words made a great impression on him. Whose book is this? Is it your's? no; it is my brother's. It is not without reason that he is angry with him. It is the greatest pleasure in life. It was ten o'clock last night when I came home. Is it true, that he is married? It is but too true.

It was envy that occasioned the first murder in the world. It is what I have heard him say. It is certain, that if any body could have overthrown the empire of the Turks, it was Charles the Twelfth. The King of Sweden made no reply to this compliment, and seemed to forget it was Marlborough who was talking to him. A King should not let himself be governed by wicked ministers. He who desires to live happy must curb his passions. Should a King treat a man more severely than the law would! There was only my father and I. It was a snare. There were several skirmishes, in one of which the young Earl of March was taken. It was a very ridiculous fashion. We should apply ourselves only to what is good. Of all felicities, that which the righteous enjoy in heaven, is the only one to which we should aspire. It is not without reason that he refused it him. There is nothing great and commendable but honour and probity. There were not better troops in the world than the Romans.

C H A P. XIII.

Of ADVERBS and CONJUNCTIONS.

RULE I.

Adverbs are generally placed after verbs in simple tenses, and before the participle in the compounds, except *souvent*, and compound adverbs, which are generally placed after the participle; as

He always speaks English; *il parle toujours Anglois.*

I have never seen him; *Je ne l'ai jamais vu.*

She is come very seasonably; *elle est venue fort à propos.*

I have seen him often; *Je l'ai vu souvent.*

Note. Adverbs of quantity require *de* before the next noun; but, if the noun has the article *of the*, *of a*, before it, it must be turned by the genitive in French; as—You have a great deal of money; *vous avez beaucoup d'argent.*

—Have

Have you yet much of the money I gave you yesterday? *avez vous encore beaucoup de l'argent que je vous donnai hier?*

RULE II.

The conjunction *if* is made by *si*, and governs the indicative. The conditional is never used in French after *si*: it must be turned by the imperfect of the indicative, except when *si* is Englished by *whether*; as

If he should come; *si il venoit.*

I did not know whether he would come or not.

Je ne savois pas si il viendrait ou non.

RULE III.

Instead of using the conjunction *if* with the compounds of the pluperfect, the English place the nominative after the verb, as if a question was asked: but *si* must be expressed in French; the nominative comes after it, and then the verb; as

Had Hannibal marched straight to Rome after the battle of Cannæ; *si Hannibal avoit marché droit à Rome après la bataille de Cannes.*

RULE IV.

The French put *que* after *Et* in the second part of a sentence, when there is a conjunction in the first part of it.

Note. *Que*, in this case, governs the same mood as the conjunction does*, except when it comes with *si*, *if*; for, though that conjunction governs the indicative, yet the verb coming after *que*, must then be put in the subjunctive.

If you want money, and are obliged to borrow some.

Si vous avez besoin d'argent, Et que vous soyez obligé en emprunter.

Whilst you play and lose your money, he learns his lesson; *pendant que vous jouez Et que vous perdez votre argent, il apprend sa leçon.*

Though he is richer than you, and has better friends.

Quoi qu'il soit plus riche que vous, Et qu'il ait de meilleurs amis.

* See Conjunctions.

I grant it you that you may be satisfied, and have no occasion to complain ; *Je vous l'accorde afin que vous soyez content, & que vous n'aiez pas lieu de vous plaindre.*

As we are poor and have no friends ; *comme nous sommes pauvres, & que nous n'avons point d'amis.*

RULE V.

The conjunction *that* is rendered by *que* ; but, when it can be turned by *in order to*, *with a view*, or *design*, it is made by *afinde* before infinitives, and by *afin que* before any other mood, or by *pour* with the next verb in the infinitive.

Que requires the next verb in the subjunctive mood, if the foregoing verb denotes *doubt*, *fear*, *uncertainty*, *wish*, or does not express any thing positive ; but, if the verb denotes *affirmation*, *certainty*, *command*, it must then be in the indicative mood.

Observe, The present and the future of the indicative are rendered by the present of the subjunctive, and the other tenses by the preterite, when the verb is to be put in that mood. *That* is very often understood in English, but must be carefully expressed in French.

I wish he would come ; *Je souhaitterois qu'il vînt.*

Note. *Que* must be repeated after *&* ; as

I wish he would come, and bring his brother with him ; *Je souhaitterois qu'il vînt, & qu'il amenât son frere avec lui.*

E X E R C I S E S.

If you should beat him, and he should complain to me. I give you that employ that you may be useful to my son, and help him if he requires it. Had you seen them oftner and conversed with them, you would not have so had an opinion of them. Though what I said is true, and though I can prove it. If he should come and find us together, what would he say ? Pray tell me whether you will come to-morrow or not, that I may not wait for you. She was afraid that you was mistaken. Did you tell your father I was in town ? You will learn French well, provided you take pains, and learn it by rules. Do you think that he will come ? If I had any thing to wish, it would not be to be a King, but never to be separated from these two men whom you

you see. Merit, says Solon, essentially distinguishes men: it alone should determine their ranks. Lucre will never make me do any thing dishonest. He is always talking English, though he has been forbid to do it. She had sold more lace than she said. He is lately arrived from Spain. I never speak English, but I make blunders. We shall be rich then. They gave her as much money as if she was poor. If he should see you. Had you spoken to her before? Had you done your duty as you should, that would not have happened. After I had tried it, and found it good. I shall go to France before it is long. As the army was drawn up, and was ready to engage. Has he yet a great deal of the wine his father sent him from France? He only did it, that he might steal the wealth of my master. He thinks she loves nobody but him. Pope Innocent the Sixth was no sooner acquainted with that fatal event, than he sent a Cardinal to Bourdeaux, a city in Guienne. He had then no cause to expect any favour from a victorious enemy. I will drink no more of it. Had you come at ten o'clock, you would have seen him. Was it not a great piece of wisdom in the first law-givers to preserve the order of society in enacting laws, by which they, who have the shadow of virtues, are contented with the shadow of esteem? The English use no article before nouns of countries and provinces, and before nouns implying the whole species of the thing spoke of, and in some other cases; but all these nouns require one in French.

C H A P. XIV.

Of the SUBJUNCTIVE.

The present and the future of the indicative must be rendered by the present of the subjunctive, and the other tenses by its preterite in the following cases:

I. After some conjunctions (See them towards the end).

II. After *qui* or *que*, preceded by a verb, or a word, denoting *doubting, wishing, willing, fearing, commanding, taking care, denying, pretending, desiring, preventing, supposition, uncertainty, ignorance, affection, sentiment, or motion of the mind*; as

Do you think that he will come?

Croiez vous qu'il vienne?

Is it true that the King goes to parliament to-morrow; *est il vrai que le Roi aille demain au parlement?*

I am sorry that he has miscarried.

Je suis fâché qu'il n'ait pas réussi.

Take a wife that can make you happy.

Prenez une femme qui puisse vous rendre heureux.

Tell him to write to her; *dites lui qu'il lui écrive.*

Do not be afraid that he will hurt you.

Ne craignez pas qu'il vous nuise.

I am sorry that she is dead.

Je suis fâché qu'elle soit morte.

If I had known that you would have come with me.

Si j'avois su que vous eussiez voulu venir avec moi.

I am glad to hear that he improves.

Je suis charmé d'apprendre qu'il fasse des progrès.

He denies that he hath done it; *il nie qu'il ait fait.*

He seeks a wife that is rich and handsome.

Il cherche une femme qui soit riche & belle.

I will have you do your duty.

Je veux que vous fassiez votre devoir.

III. After *qui*, *que*, *dont*, *à qui*, coming after a superlative, or a negation, or a word taken in a negative sense; as

It is not true that she is dead.

Il n'est pas vrai qu'elle soit morte.

He is the only man who has lived without weakness.

C'est le seul homme qui ait vécu sans foiblesses.

It is the greatest pleasure that you could do him.

C'est le plus grand plaisir que vous pussiez lui faire.

It is the most bloody battle that has been fought for many ages; *c'est la bataille la plus sanglante qui se soit donnée depuis plusieurs siècles.*

In other cases the indicative must be used; that is, after some conjunctions (see them towards the end); and when the verb denotes *affirmation*, *declaration*, and the like.

E X E R C I S E S.

Give her reasons that can convince her. Chuse a friend whom you esteem, and who can, and will do you a service in need.

need. Do you imagine that I am no longer your friend? He has no friends to whom he can trust. I do not like to go to see any body, unless I am sure to be well-received. Though I have no money, and do not know where to borrow any. There was not then in Europe any crowned head who had any personal merit. He laid no taxes that the people could complain of. He took care that justice should be administered with that strict impartiality, that does not distinguish the great from the small. I am willing to believe, that, faithful to his engagement, he has a mind to keep his word. His works were proscribed in France for the only good things that were in them. I would have aspired to the empire of the world, had I been assured that I would have succeeded, or perished in the attempt. Though there was no lady at court whose genius could reach her's. Do you think that bees make honey for fools and ignorant fellows only? Is there a man who has lived without weakness? Can you see any body that looks better than I do? Most part of our historians have exclaimed with reason against the ambition of this court; but I do not know one, that has done justice to her prudence. I don't know if any other nation could have preserved its privileges. It is true that he is dead, but it is not true that his wife is ill. Do you think that he believed it? It is astonishing that the army was not entirely defeated. It is not certain that our army has been beat. Tell him to write to her. We are all surprised that he is returned so soon. She is very glad that he is come. Is it certain that he will set out to-day? She looks for a husband that is rich and handsome. I am very sorry that he has lost his law-suit. Do you think that she would go to the play, if I invited her? Does he think that he learns well? Take care that he does that well. She declares that she has not wrote to him; but I believe she lies. I believe that he will come. Do you believe he will come? I did not think he would have come. I am sorry he is come. They wonder that he has refused it. He insists that his orders be executed. They never could have thought that he would have submitted to so hard terms. I doubt whether any philosopher has ever known the cause of winds. I did not know you had learnt mathematicks. It is astonishing that nobody has asked her in marriage. She is the most agreeable lady that I know, and the least conceited I have ever seen. I do not say that the Earl is of that character, or that he has a
mind

mind to deceive you. We must not always judge ill of our neighbour. It cannot be denied, that this virtue is the greatest charm of civil life. It is inconceivable to think how few well-matched couples are seen in the world, and how many people, endued with uncommon accomplishments, and who make the joy and pleasure of all companies, only live together to plague one another. The money of the French, the intrigues of Rome, and the cries of the protestants, called out from Sweden, Gustavus Adolphus, the only King of that time that could pretend to the name of heroe, and the only one that could overthrow the Austrian power. Charles the Twelfth is perhaps the only man that has lived without weakness. It is the finest rose that one can see. The parliament of England would grant no supplies to the King. He is a better soldier than his brother. But, for fear people should suspect the reason of his voyage, he embarked for America.

C H A P. XV.

Above;

In the sense of *more than*, is rendered by *plus de*; as
He is above twenty; *il a plus de vingt ans.*

As;

Is rendered as follows:

I. By *aussi* before adjectives and adverbs; and by *que* when it comes after them, or the words *as much*, *as many*, or when it is repeated in a sentence, except when it can be turned by *though*, for then it must be made by *tout*.

Cunning as he is, he was deceived.

Tout ruse qu'il est, il fut trompé.

He is as tall as you; *il est aussi grand que vous.*

Come as often as you can; *venez aussi souvent que vous pourrez.*

Take as many apples as you please.

Prennez autant de pommes qu'il vous plaira.

II. By *si* before *little* when it is an adverb.

As little as you please; *si peu qu'il vous plaira.*

<i>As much as</i> <i>As many as</i> <i>As much</i> <i>As many</i>	}	are rendered by	{	<i>Autant que, tant que</i> <i>Autant que, tant que</i> <i>Autant</i> <i>Autant</i>
--	---	-----------------	---	--

As long as, in the sense of a *long time*, by *tant que*.

As soon as, by *desque*, *sitot que*.

As far as, by *jusqu'* before nouns, and by *aussi loin que* before verbs: *as to*, or *for*, by *quant*; the next noun must be put in the dative.

III. By *en qualité de*, in the sense of *in the capacity*, or *quality*; as

He lives with me as a footman; *il demeure chez moi en qualité de laquais.*

In other cases, *as* is rendered by *comme*.

After;

Is rendered by *après que* before nominatives, or any tense of the indicative or subjunctive; and by *après* before participles, and nouns not followed by a verb.

After he had done; *après qu'il eut fait.*

After having drunk after my father.

Après avoir bu après mon pere.

At;

Is rendered as follows:

I. By the dative before nouns of *cities*, *places*, *towns*; and before nouns denoting *aim*, *end*, *posture*, *expende*, *situation*, *risk*, or the *place* where one *is*, or *was*, except when it falls under the fourth case, and after the verb *to play*; as

I was at Greenwich; *J'étois à Greenwich.*

He aimed at the crown; *il aspirait à la couronne.*

She is playing at cards; *elle joue aux cartes.*

He threw himself at her feet; *il se jeta à ses pieds.*

He was at court; *il étoit à la cour.*

He was at the head of his regiment.

Il étoit à la tête de son regiment.

That bridge was built at the expense of the city.

Ce pont a été fait aux fraix de la cité.

I will defend him at the peril of my life.

Je le défendrai au peril de ma vie.

II. By the *genitive*, after words denoting *anger*, *resentment*, *provocation*, *derision*, *surprise*, *joy*, *sorrow*; as

The Greeks incensed at the affront offered to their King; *les Grecs irrités de l'affront que leur Roi avoit reçu.*

He laughs at his mother; *il se moque de sa mere.*

I am surprised at the impudence of his brother.

Je suis surpris de l'impudence de son frere.

III. By

III. By *en*, and sometimes *dans* in the sense of *in*; as
I was in England at that time.

J'étois en Angleterre dans ce tems là.

I am at liberty; *Je suis en liberté.*

IV. By *à* before nouns of number, and when it is
not followed by the article *the*; but, if *the* is expressed,
it is rendered by the dative; as

He goes to bed at nine o'clock, and rises at four in
the morning; *il se couche à neuf heures, & se leve à quatre
heures du matin.*

He borrows at twenty per cent; *il emprunte à vingt
pour cent.*

She went at a great rate; *elle alloit à grands pas.*

We were at table; *nous étions à table.*

We were at the King's table; *nous étions à la table du
Roi.*

V. By *chez* before the word *house*, which is then not
expressed in French. Sometimes *house* is left out in
English, and its place is supplied by an *'s* added to the
substantive; but it makes no difference in French.

Note. If a pronoun possessive comes before *house*, it
must be rendered by a pronoun personal in French.

My, by *moi*; *his*, by *lui*; *her*, by *elle*; *their*, by
eux; *our*, by *nous*; *your*, by *vous*.

She was at my house; but she is now at her aunt's.

Elle étoit chez moi; mais elle est à présent chez sa tante.

He lived then at her house; but now he lives at his
father's; *il demouroit alors chez elle; mais à présent il de-
meure chez son pere.*

It is sometimes rendered by *par*, in the sense of *by*, or
through.

He came in at the door, and went out at the window.

Il entra par la porte, & sortit par la fenetre.

By;

Is rendered in the following ways:

I. By *de* after a comparative, and before a noun of
number or measure, and in the sense of *during*; as

He is taller by the whole head.

Il est plus grand de toute la tête.

He is longer by a foot ; *il est plus long d'un pied.*

He went away by night ; *il partit de nuit.*

II. By the genitive of the next noun, when the foregoing word denotes *love* or *hatred* ; also after the participles *followed*, *attended*, *preceded*, *imitated*, and when it comes before words denoting the cause, or the weapon which occasioned somebody's *death*, *disorder*, or *wound*.

He is very much beloved by the people.

Il est fort aimé du peuple.

He is hated by the great ; *il est haï des grands.*

The King was followed by the foot and horse-guards.

Le Roi étoit suivi des gardes à pied & à cheval.

He was killed by a cannon-ball ; *il fut tué d'un boulet de canon.*

By the dative after the verbs *to sell*, *to buy*, before a noun of weight or measure, and by *à* before participles, after verbs denoting *profit*, *loss*, *advantage*, or the means by which one gets his living.

She gets her living by spinning ; *elle gagne sa vie à filer.*

He sells silk by the pound, or by the ell.

Il vend la soie à la livre, ou à l'aune.

There is nothing to be got by teaching ; *il n'y a rien à gagner à enseigner.*

I bought it by the weight ; *je l'ai acheté au poids.*

IV. By *en* before participles* not preceded by a word denoting *beginning* or *ending* ; as

Masters learn by teaching.

Les maîtres apprennent en enseignant.

V. By *par* before nouns denoting *cause*, *means*, *action*, *authority*, *ways*, and after verbs signifying *beginning*, *ending*, *doing*, *passing*, *commanding*, *going* ; and in the sense of *on*, *over*, *through* ; as

We began by drinking ; *nous commençâmes par boire.*

He was killed by his guards ; *il fut tué par ses gardes.*

The army was commanded by the Prince of Condé.

L'armée étoit commandée par le Prince de Condé.

* Except in the foregoing case.

We have travelled by sea and by land.

Nous avons voyagé par mer, & par terre.

Will you go by water? *voulez vous aller par eau?*

Par must be repeated before every noun, except when they are synonymous.

He conquered them by force and cunning;

Il les conquit par force & par adresse.

VI. By *près*§, in the sense of *near*; as

I was sitting by him; *j'étois assis près de lui.*

As I was going by the Exchange; *comme je passois près de la bourse.*

In;

Is rendered as follows:

I. By the genitive of the next noun before or after a superlative.

The best troops in the world; *les meilleures troupes du monde.*

II. By the dative, after words denoting wounding, hurting, pain.

He was wounded in the thigh, and in the arm.

Il fut blessé à la cuisse & au bras.

III. By *à* before participles (the participle must then be rendered by the present of the infinitive), if the foregoing word requires *à* before the infinitive, and by *en*† if it does not; that is, when it can be turned by *as*; also by *à* before names of cities, villages, &c. denoting where one is or was, lives, or lived; as

He spends his time in reading and writing.

Il passe le tems à lire, & à écrire.

He broke his leg in dancing (*i. e.* as he was dancing).

Il s'est cassé la jambe en dansant.

He is in London; *il est à Londres.*

IV. By *en* before nouns of countries, and nouns without an article (except proper names), and when it denotes how long one is in doing something; as

I was in Spain; *j'étois en Espagne.*

§ *Près* governs the genitive.

† The participle must not be altered after *en*.

He can make a watch in three days.

Il peut faire une montre en trois jours.

V. By *dans* before nouns with an article, and before names of *authors*, and sometimes of *cities*, and whenever it can be turned by *into*, *within*; also when it comes before a noun of number, denoting how long it will be before the thing spoken of will be undertaken or begun.

I was in the room; *j'étois dans la chambre.*

In the war of 1741; *dans la guerre de 1741.*

I read in Voltaire; *j'ai lu dans Voltaire.*

I will set out in three days for Bath.

Je partirai pour Bath dans trois jours.

VI. By *sous*, in the sense of *under*; as

In the reign of Augustus; *sous le règne d'Auguste.*

A book in the press; *un livre sous la presse.*

In is not expressed before the word *year*, followed by a noun of date.

In the year 1742; *l'an mil sept cent quarante deux.*

For;

Is made by *pendant* in the sense of *during*; by *car* before the indicative and subjunctive moods*; by *pour* before infinitives and participles; as

I cannot lend him money; for I have none.

Je ne saurois lui prêter de l'argent; car je n'en ai point.

He was absent for three days; *il fut absent pendant trois jours.*

For her sake; *pour l'amour d'elle.*

For is not expressed in French after the verbs *to ask*, *to sue*, *to beg*, &c.

From;

Is rendered as follows:

I. By *depuis* coming after words denoting what was doing, or will be done, between one place and another, without specifying the distance; but if the distance is specified, it is then turned by the genitive; as

By *car* also before a noun, when it does not govern it, and by *pour* if it does.

They

They were pursued from the bridge as far as the city.

Ils furent poursuivis depuis le pont jusqu'à la ville.

There are seventy-two miles from London to Dover.

Il y a soixante & douze milles de Londres à Douvres.

There were four miles from the bridge to the city.

Il y avoit quatre milles du pont à la ville.

It is also rendered by *depuis* before words denoting beginning, ending, enumeration, time, and extent of lands, countries.

From the creation of the world till now.

Depuis la création du monde jusqu'à à présent.

I have read that book from the beginning to the end.

J'ai lu ce livre depuis le commencement jusqu'à la fin.

They were all whipt from the first to the last.

Ils furent tous fouettés depuis le premier jusqu'au dernier.

II. By *de* before participles, which must then be turned by the present of the infinitive; and in some other cases already taken notice of: See the rules upon articles and adjectives.

I come from playing; *je viens de jouer.*

III. By *par*, in the sense of *by* or *out*; as

I did it from a principle of charity; *je le fis par un principe de charité.*

IV. By *de chez* before the word *house*, either expressed or understood.

I come from your house; *je viens de chez vous.*

As I was coming from my uncle's.

Comme je venois de chez mon oncle.

V. By *dès*, in the sense of *since*.

He had been used to it from his infancy.

Il y avoit été accoutumé dès sa jeunesse.

From the moment I saw him; *dès le moment que je le vis.*

In other cases it is rendered by the genitive of the next noun.

I have received a letter from the brother.

J'ai reçu une lettre du frere.

VI. By

VI. By *de la part*, in the sense of *by somebody's desire*, or *order**.

Go and tell him from me ; *allez lui dire de ma part*.

Of ;

Is rendered by *de* before participles, and in some other cases.

The participle must be turned by the present of the infinitive ; as

He is incapable of lying ; *il est incapable de mentir*.

On ;

Is made :

I. By *de* before nouns without an article, or requiring none, coming after the verb *to live*, *to subsist*, in the sense of *livelihood* ; and by the genitive, if the noun has an article before it ; as

They live on herrings ; *ils vivent de harengs*.

He lives on the fortune of his wife.

Il vit du bien de sa femme.

She lives on charity ; *elle vit de charités*.

She lives on the charity of the faithful.

Elle vit des charités des fideles.

It is rendered by the genitive after the verb *to depend*, denoting *authority*, or being in one's *power*, and after the verb *to play* ; as—That depends on the King ; *cela depend du Roi*.

As she depended on her uncle.

Comme elle dependoit de son oncle.

He plays on the violin ; *il joue du violon*.

On is not expressed in French before names of days and nouns of number, distinguishing the day of the month, nor after verbs, when it makes part of their signification ; as

On the fifth of January ; *le cinq de Janvier*.

In a few other cases it is rendered by the genitive, or the dative, in the sense of the words *of*, *to*, *from*.

He, on his side ; *lui de son coté*.

We hear on all sides ; *on apprend de tous cotés*.

* But, if there is a pronoun personal, *La* is left out, and the pronoun personal is made by a pronoun possessive feminine.

On the right hand ; *à droite*.—On the contrary ; *au contraire*.

In other cases it is rendered by *sur*.

Upon is made like *on*.

To ;

Is rendered as follows :

I. By *en* before a noun that is repeated, and before names of countries, counties, provinces, coming after the verbs *to go*, *to return*, *to send*, *to dispatch*, *to come*.

We went to France, and to Italy.

Nous allâmes en France & en Italie.

He returned to England ; *il revint en Angleterre.*

He goes from door to door ; *il va de porte en porte.*

He ran from rank to rank ; *il courut de rang en rang.*

II. By *chez* after the verb *to go*, before the word *house*†, or a noun after which it is understood ; as

I went to my cousin's ; *j'allai chez mon cousin.*

He came to my house ; *il vint chez moi.*

The pronouns possessive must be rendered by a pronoun personal after *chez*.

III. By *jusqu'*, in the sense of *as far as*, *till*, and when it comes after *from*, rendered by *depuis* ; the next noun must be put in the dative ; as

They pursued us to the very gates of the city.

Ils nous poursuivirent jusqu' aux portes de la ville.

From the creation of the world to the birth of Christ.

Depuis la création du monde jusqu'à la naissance de Christ.

IV. By *envers*, in the sense of *towards* ; as

His ingratitude to me ; *son ingratitude envers moi.*

See also *To* before infinitives. In other cases it is rendered by the dative of the next noun.

With ;

Is rendered thus :

I. By *dans* before nouns denoting *aim*, *end*, *design*, *motive*, *intent* ; as

He entered the camp with an intent to murder the King ; *il entra dans le camp dans le dessein de tuer le Roi.*

II. By *de* before participles active, and after the verb

† *House* must not then be expressed in French.

to die, to starve; also after participles passive, and between an adjective and a noun without an article.

But if the noun has an article, it is turned by the genitive; as—He was attended with armed people; *il étoit accompagné de gens armés.*

She was dying with hunger; *elle mourroit de faim.*

I am tired with writing; *je suis las d'écrire.*

She is very much pleased with the behaviour of your brother; *elle est très contente de la conduite de votre frère.*

III. By *contre*, after words denoting passion, anger, resentment; as

She is very angry with you; *elle est très fâchée contre vous.*

In most other cases it is rendered by *avec*.

Go with your sister; *allez avec votre sœur.*

Out, Out of;

Is rendered by *par*, in the sense of *through*, *by*.

He did it out of envy; *il le fit par envie.*

I told him of it out of friendship; *je le lui dit par amitié.*

By the genitive in the sense of *from*.

He snatched it out of my hands.

Il me l'arracha des mains.

I took that verse out of Virgil; *j'ai pris ce vers de Virgile.*

E X E R C I S E S.

He was imitated by nobody. He was at the head of above two thousand men. We played at drafts, and at chess. Give him as little money as you can. I went with him as far as the bridge. He followed us as far as he could. As long as you will sit up so late, you never will be well. Our garden is longer by twenty yards. Our army was stronger by five thousand men. He was supported by the Duke of Hamilton. The most perfect men. They came in by the parlour window, and went out by the kitchen door. He was wounded in the shoulder. She spends her time in reading and writing. My horse is in the stable; where is hers? I find no pleasure in walking in the streets. He broke his arm in fencing. He delights in plaguing him. I came from York to London in three days. I shall set out for Plymouth in three days. I followed him from London

London to Deptford. There are seventy-two miles from London to Dover. The King seeing his troops giving way, ran from rank to rank, spiriting up his soldiers. He had been in several engagements in Flanders, and had great interest at court. The two Spencers were at the same seized, the one in Bristol, the other in Wales; and both of them were instantly hanged. As he had behaved in a most scandalous manner. He died at Perth in Scotland. I wish I could play on the organ. I was yesterday at Mr. Bland's. At what o'clock? At six. I sent him to your uncle's, and your uncle sent him to your father's. We are going to Sweden, from whence we will go to Russia, then to Vienna, the capital of Germany. I met them as they were returning from my father's. I was by him when that accident happened. I lived in London, at the King's head in St. James's-street. I have seen them at his house, and at your's. The Emperor was very much beloved by the people; yet, for all that, he was murdered by his guards. They will be five days in going from London to Bristol. He goes begging from door to door. I have had the rheumatism for six months. When I was at Paris. We will dine at Mr. Gardiner's, and after dinner, we will play at cards. He asked those who stood by him. We were at dinner when he came in. As he was sitting by the fire, he dropped down dead. I found the ring in going up the steps. It is as easy to spoil boys by forgiving as by punishing them. Nothing is so conducive to happiness as to know things as they are. That knowledge is chiefly acquired by reflecting on what happens in the world, and very little by books. They lost their time in taking places, instead of marching into the heart of the country. He does as much work in three days as you do in six. They were a fortnight in demolishing the house. I have not been ungrateful to her. I was there at ten o'clock. They went away in the day-time. They live on nothing but milk and cheese. He ran with all his might. It freezes in that country from the month of October. Women, in that country, are as laborious and as robust as the men. Philip the Second, King of Spain, was used to business from his infancy. He is tormented with the gout; he has it in his hands and feet. I did not see them in the street. I did not see there curious and idle men, who go to seek news from place to place, as in Greece. He offered to raze all the places he possessed, from Basil to Philipsburg.

burg. He lives with me as a footman. I have a pain
 in my side and in my knees. After he had been set at
 liberty. That Prince died in the year 1693 of a disorder,
 caused by the troubles her husband gave her. From that
 time Lewis the Fourteenth went no more to public shews.
 He was afraid of plunging himself into a war with England.
 Hannibal, at that time, commanded the Carthaginian
 armies in Spain. It is not surprizing, that at a period,
 when every body consulted his private interest. I met them
 in going to my cousin's. The enemies advanced as far as
 the river, with an intent to cross it. You must sing in your
 turn, and not before. We see the lakes, sea, and rivers,
 stocked with numberless kinds of living creatures. We find
 every mountain and marsh, wilderness and wood, plen-
 tifully stocked with all sorts of birds and beasts. The place
 was furnished with arms, money, and soldiers. He was
 terrified at the sight of so numerous an army. I am tired
 with reading. She was pleased with your present. The
 Carthaginians were busy in recruiting their army, com-
 manded by Hannibal, who was then encamped at Zama.
 The King's picture was adorned with diamonds and other
 precious stones. France, being exhausted of men and
 money, was obliged to sue for peace. He has as many
 masters and tyrants, as he has violent desires. Every flat-
 terer lives at the expence of those who listen to him. He
 broke her head with a stone. If I was satisfied with you
 then, I am yet more so now. There are few in England or
 at Rome, more learned than he. The walls of Babylon
 were built of large bricks, fifty cubits thick, and two hundred
 cubits high. They died with hunger. We were starving
 with cold. Miltiades had but ten thousand men at Mara-
 thon; Cæsar employed but twenty-two thousand at Phar-
 salia, and Epaminondas six thousand at Leuctra. At the
 other end of the bridge there was another palace. The
 pains you take in teaching me those things which conduce to
 piety and virtue. I am angry with them, when they do not
 improve as they should. Of all recreations, there are none
 so innocent as hunting and fishing. He is a good man,
 for he takes pleasure in obliging every body. The boar was
 going to avenge himself of the ass, by tearing him in pieces.
 He who puts his trust in God will not be disappointed.
 The stone on which he fell and broke his arm, has been
 removed. The horse on which I was, is not mine: it is
 my

my cousin's. He says that these monuments are made of natural stones. A jack-daw decked himself with the feathers of peacocks, which were moulting. The royal army was divided into two bodies; Condé fell upon that commanded by Marechal Hocquincourt, and this body was defeated, as soon as attacked. He had defeated him in several engagements. The road to power is edged with precipices on all sides. He was looked upon with more pity than admiration. He embarked on board a seventy-four gun ship, with which he entered the Humber. Philipsburg was taken in nineteen days, and Manheim in three. Treves and Spire surrendered as soon as the French were at their gates. These cities were destroyed by fire and sword. They perished with cold and hunger. What part of France does he come from? This journey, from St. Germain to Lisle in Flanders, was a continual feast. It happens seldom, but those who have served their country, die regretted by the public. At his return from France, he was introduced at court. That order of knighthood is as ancient as any in the kingdom. Among these ambassadors, came the famous John, Duke of Marlborough, from Queen Anne, of England; he was at St. James's a dextrous courtier, in parliament the leader of a party, and in foreign countries the ablest negociator of his time. He had done as much harm to France by his eloquence as by his sword. Nothing could have arrived at Rome more seasonably than this news. As he had only ten thousand men, he retired to a hill. I shall be in London on Tuesday. There was at court a young lady called Astarbée; she was handsome as a goddess. She pretended that she loved nobody but him, at the very time she could not abide him. As he did not love virtue, he had nobody about him but selfish and artful people. The allies, as well as the French, were tired with so many wars. All the inhabitants, from the oldest to the youngest, were put to the sword. He came to us with open arms. Fifty large streets crossed this city from one end to the other. The hares, frightened at the noise they heard, ran away half dead with fear. From the time of the restoration to that of the revolution. At that time there was no party but was weak; that of the court was as much so as any other. In the year of Rome two hundred and sixty-three, Coriolanus was banished by the people, at the instigation of the tribunes. He set out for his exile, with a firm resolution to be revenged. The whole world was struck with

horror at his barbarity. The Barons were so enraged at King John's tyranny, that they required him to restore the laws of King Edward, and renew the charter of Henry the First. He was crowned on the 19th of January, in the year 1750. The *Namur*, a ninety-gun ship, was then at anchor at Spithead. The King assisted publicly at this solemnity.

C H A P. XVI. Of PARTICIPLES.

RULE I.

When a participle active is used substantively in English, it is rendered by a substantive in French; but if the verb has no substantive derived from it, the participle must be rendered by the indicative mood, with *ce qui* before it; as

He loves fishing and hunting; *il aime la peche et la chasse.*

The impoverishing of the body is the enriching of the soul; *l'appauvrissement du corps est ce qui enrichit l'ame.*

RULE II.

When *who, that, as, whilst*, can be put with any tense of the verb *to be* before a participle active, it is commonly rendered by the imperfect of the indicative in French, with *qui* before it.

I met them walking, or as they were walking.

Je les rencontrai qui se promenoient.

I see him running; *je le vois qui court.*

He asked his friends standing about him (or, who were standing); *il demanda à ses amis qui étoient autour de lui.*

It may also be often rendered by the present of the infinitive, when it denotes a present time; as

I see them coming; *je les vois venir*; or *je les vois qui viennent.*

RULE III.

The participle active is rendered by the present of the infinitive in the following cases:

I. After *of, from, with, without*; as

He ran the risk of breaking his neck.

Il courut risque de se casser le cou.

I hindered

I hindered him from making noise.

Je l'empêchai de faire du bruit.

He went away without saying a word.

Il s'en alla sans dire mot.

II. After *by*, rendered by *par*, or *à*, and after *in* rendered by *à*; but if these two words are rendered by *en*, the participle must not be altered.

She gets nothing by complaining.

Elle ne gagne rien à se plaindre.

They began by drinking; *ils commencerent par boire.*

Masters learn by teaching; *les maîtres apprennent en enseignant.*

There is a pleasure in doing good.

Il y a du plaisir à faire du bien.

He broke his leg in dancing; *il se cassa la jambe en dansant.*

III. When it comes immediately after a verb or the case it governs, unless it falls under the second Rule; as

I cannot help loving her; *je ne saurois m'empêcher de l'aimer.*

If we could see them coming; *si nous pouvions les voir venir.*

R U L E IV.

The participle active is made by the compound of the infinitive after the words *for*, *after*.

He was hanged for robbing (*i. e.* for having robbed).

Il fut pendu pour avoir volé.

After drinking a glass of wine (or, after having drunk); *après avoir bu un verre de vin.*

R U L E V.

The participle in English is rendered by the participle in French when it comes after a substantive nominative, and when it does not fall under the afore-said rules.

A cock scraping on a dunghill.

Un coq gratant sur un fumier.

A lion fell into some nets, and not being able to extricate himself from them; *un lion tomba dans des filets; & ne pouvant s'en débarrasser.*

R U L E VI.

Participles passive are sometimes declinable, and sometimes indeclinable; that is, in some cases they agree in gender and number with the foregoing noun or pronoun, and in some other cases they do not. They agree with the foregoing noun or pronoun in the following cases.

I. When they come after the verb *to be*, forming the passive voice; and when they are used adjectively, and in verbs reflected; except when they are followed by a nominative, or an accusative.

She is beloved and esteemed; *elle est aimée & estimée.*

I hate spoiled children; *je hais les enfants gâtés.*

They got up at five o'clock; *ils se sont levés à cinq heures.*

His sisters are dead; *ses sœurs sont mortes.*

II. After pronouns interrogative, and after the verb *avoir*, preceded by one of the following accusatives (not followed by a verb governing them): *que, le, la, les, nous, vous.*

The ladies whom I have seen.

Les dames que j'ai vues.

The services that you have done him.

Les services que vous lui avez rendus.

The pains he has taken; *les peines qu'il a prises.*

What fable have you learnt? *quelle fable avez-vous apprise?*

That, or *whom*, are often understood in English, but it makes no difference as to the participle in French.

III. When they are followed by a participle active, or an infinitive that can be turned by it in English, and does not require *à, de, pour*, before it in French: also when it can be rendered by the imperfect of the indicative, with *who, that, as, when*, before it. If the infinitive cannot be turned by the participle active, or the imperfect, the participle passive is then indeclinable.

He has been at their house, and he has found them drinking tea; *il a été chez elles, & il les a trouvées qui prenoient le thé.*

I met them riding post ; *je les ai rencontrés qui cou-
roient la poste.*

I have seen her dance (or dancing).

Je l'ai vue danser.

The ladies whom I saw go by (or going by).

Les dames que j'ai vues passer.

I have let them all pass (one cannot say here passing).

Je les ai toutes laissées passer.

The books which he has made me read (not reading).

Les livres qu'il m'a fait lire.

IV. When they are followed by an infinitive, requir-
ing *à, de, pour*, in French, provided the foregoing noun
or pronoun may, without altering the sense, be put
between the participle and the infinitive.

But if they cannot be placed so without altering the
sense, the participle is then undeclinable.

The fable which I have given you to get by heart.
i. e. I have given you the fable to get by heart.

La fable que je vous ai donnée à apprendre par cœur.

Where are the books that I have given you to send
to your father. *i. e.* I have given you the books.

*Où sont les livres que je vous ai donnés pour envoyer à
votre père.*

The ladies that I had invited to come to dine with us
are arrived ; *les dames que j'avois priées de venir dîner
avec nous sont arrivées.*

The language you have begun to learn (one cannot
say, you have begun the language to learn) ; *la langue
que vous avez commencé d'apprendre.*

The story which I have heard him tell last night
(we cannot say, I have heard him the story tell) ;
l'histoire que je lui ai entendu raconter hier au soir.

R U L E VII.

Participles passive are indeclinable in the following
cases :

I. When they come after *avoir*, not preceded by an
accusative.

She has seen the garden ; *elle a vu le jardin.*

They have drunk ; *ils ont bu.*

II. When they are immediately followed by *qui* or *que*, *that*, *which**,

The reasons which he thought I approved of.

Les raisons qu'il a cru que j'approuvois.

III. When they are used impersonally.

The hot weather we have had ; *les chaleurs qu'il a fait.*

IV. When they are immediately followed by another participle passive (which must be made then by the present of the infinitive).

It is a thing which I have seen done many times.

C'est une chose que j'ai vu faire plusieurs fois.

The songs which we have heard sung.

Les chansons que nous avons entendu chanter.

V. When the participle is followed by an infinitive with which it makes an indivisible sense ; that is, when it cannot be separated from it, without altering the meaning of the sentence. .

Many people fall again into the same errors which they had resolved to avoid ; *bien des gens retombent dans les memes erreurs qu'ils avoient resolu d'eviter.*

Why did you deviate from the path you had begun to follow ? *pourquoi vous etes vous ecarte de la route que vous aviez commence à suivre.*

Resolved and *begun* cannot be separated from the infinitive ; for we could not say, without altering the sense, they had resolved the errors to avoid ; you begun the paths to follow. The participles *pu*, *voulu*, *parlé*, *agi*, *eté*, are always indeclinable.

Note. Participles passive are made by the present of the infinitive after *might have*. See Chap. XVII.

E X E R C I S E S.

(See RULES I, II, III, IV, and V.)

He has been writing. I admire the rising and the setting of the sun. Philosophers knowing the truth, should not conceal it. They found her crying. They were tired with writing. He hindered him from taking the city. He went

* Which is sometimes, and *that* in this sense, is almost always understood in English, but they must both be expressed in French.

out without asking leave. My son, said Lewis the Fourteenth to the Dauphin, by sending you into Germany to command my army, I give you an opportunity of shewing your merit. Catinat had begun by being a counsellor, and had left that profession for losing a cause he thought just. Men are there busy in unloading their ships, or selling their goods. She displeased them in endeavouring to please him. She could not forbear crying. Cain was cursed for killing his brother.

What was their surprise, when, after waiting with a great deal of impatience, they saw at last a mouse creep out! She is very much blamed for taking his part. A wolf, drinking at the head of a fountain, perceived a lamb drinking much lower. A frog, seeing an ox grazing in a meadow, swelled her skin as much as she could, in order to become as big as the ox; then looking at her young ones, she said, what do you think of it now?

(See RULES VI, and VII.)

Virtue is esteemed by every body. Spectacles are only frequented by idle and curious people. Had they got up this morning betimes, as they should. The ladies whom you have invited are come. Where are they? They are gone into the garden. Bad news always spread sooner than good. What houses has he bought? She had not been rewarded for the pains she had taken. The ladies whom you saw go into that shop, are married. He has seen her undress many times. I have heard her sing. The fable which I have begun to translate, is easy.

The lesson which he has given me to learn. The watches which he has ordered me to sell are not good. You may imagine what trouble I have had to persuade her to it. The history which I had begun to read was not very entertaining. The resolution I had taken, to go into the country. It is a song which I have heard sung often. It is a new powder which I have learnt to make. The revolution which I had told him would happen. The lesson which I have made him learn. The goods you have sent for from Germany are arrived. I omitted all the circumstances which I thought would hurt him. He rejoices at the misfortunes of others. There is no age or condition but can reap great benefits from history. I know well whom you mean. He made war then in Spain almost at his sole expence.

GENERAL EXERCISES.

There is the guinea you lent me last week. Nothing can be more agreeable to those who have been accustomed to the pleasure of thinking, than the hope of filling their imagination with new images, of clearing their doubts, and enlightening their reason. The pains you have taken in teaching me those things which conduce to piety and virtue. Gaming is a vice to which she is inclined, and which will be her ruin. That feast was more magnificent than any of those Cardinal Mazarin had given. The prisoners whom he had suffered to escape, were retaken. Scipio returned to Rome through crouds of people, whom the curiosity of seeing the conqueror of Hannibal, had brought on the road. Do you not see them going to make their escape? The bottles and the glasses which he found broken.

Perseus went on with the preparations of war which his father had begun. Deep sighs hindered her from answering. The despair that tyranny inspires had armed them at first; liberty had animated their courage, and the Princes of the house of Orange had made them excellent soldiers. The books which I have given him to read. These republicans increased their wealth, and secured their greatness and tranquillity in treating with Spain, without breaking off with France. I had again put the cards in the place where I had found them. I have received the letters about the affair I had proposed to you; and, after reading them with attention, I have found, that if I had undertaken it, I should have met with difficulties that I had not foreseen. Have you not a mind to buy the songs which you have heard her sing? What enemies has he not brought upon himself! The persons that I have seen who were prejudiced in his favour. Many of the ladies who came to the gate, were my relations; therefore I have let them come in. The cities which the King had ordered him to besiege. Sylla wrote a long letter to the senate, in which he represented the important services he had done to his country, the injuries he had received, and the hardships he had gone through. Perfidious wretch, who could not be bound neither by the faith he had given her, nor by the oaths he had made, nor compassion at seeing near her time the poor unfortunate girl whom he had ruined. After taking and
plundering

plundering that unfortunate city, he returned to France. Whom have you been visiting to day? The unreasonable desire of getting too much, makes us often lose what we possess. I could not help shedding tears when I saw the misery she was in. It had been determined in a council of war to penetrate into the heart of the country, without losing time in taking places: a wise resolution, had it been strictly pursued. Pleasures taken without moderation shorten our days more than the art of physicians can lengthen them. The coasts of Spain were well guarded. The English were then under the command of one of the oddest men that England has ever produced.

C H A P. XVII.

To have, might, could, would, to be, some, ago, this, these, whatever, as, though, quite, for all, just;

Are rendered as follows:

To have;

Is rendered by the verb *etre*, in the compounds of reflected verbs, and likewise of the following, *partir, sortir, repartir, venir, revenir, devenir, convenir, disconvenir, parvenir, survenir*.

I have dressed myself; *je me suis habillé.*

We had agreed; *nous étions convenus.*

Might have;

Is rendered by the conditional of *avoir*, with *pu* after it, before participles passive, which must then be turned by the present of the infinitive active.

You might have done it sooner.

Vous auriez pu le faire plutôt.

Might is rendered like *might have* at the end of a sentence, and when *have* is understood after it.

If you had done your exercise this morning, as you might; *si vous aviez fait votre thème ce matin, comme vous l'auriez pu.*

Could;

Is rendered by the imperfect, the preterite, the conditional, and the compounds of *pouvoir*, according to the following rules.

I. By

I. By the conditional, when it denotes a time to come (except after *si*).

I could do it if I would ; *je pourrais le faire si je voulais.*

He says he could go to London in two days.

Il dit qu'il pourroit aller à Londres en deux jours.

II. By the imperfect, or the preterite, when it denotes a time past, and can be turned by *was able*, *was in the power*, and after *si*, *if*.

He could speak to him when he would.

Il pouvoit lui parler quand il vouloit.

He did what he could to hurt me,

Il fit ce qu'il put pour me nuire.

If I could only see him ; *si je pouvois seulement le voir.*

III. By the compounds of the present, the imperfect, preterite, in the sense of *to have been able*, *to have in one's power* ; and by the compound of the conditional in the sense of *could have*. The next participle must be then rendered by the present of the infinitive active.

I have said all that I could in his behalf ; *i. e.* I have said all that was in my power ; *j'ai dit tout ce que j'ai pu en sa faveur.*

There is my exercise ; I could not do it sooner ; *i. e.* It has not been in my power, or I have not been able to do it sooner ; *voilà mon thème ; je n'ai pas pu le faire plutôt.*

He has not done all that he could ; *i. e.* he could have done ; *il n'a pas fait tout ce qu'il auroit pu.*

Could have is rendered like *might have*†, and the participle passive coming after it must be rendered by the present of the infinitive active.

She could have done better ; *elle auroit pu mieux faire.*

Would ;

In the sense of *being willing*, is rendered by the same tenses of the verb *vouloir*, that *could* or *could have* are rendered by *pouvoir*.

You could have done it sooner if you would ; *i. e.* if you had been willing ; *vous auriez pu le faire plutôt si vous aviez voulu.*

† Except when it comes after *si*, *if*. It must then be made by the imperfect of the indicative :—If I could have seen him ; *si j'avois pu le voir.*

He did whatever he would ; *il faisoit tout ce qu'il vouloit.*
 You might have had every thing you would.

Vous auriez pu avoir tout ce que vous auriez voulu.

Will have, would have, would have had, are rendered by the present, the imperfect, or preterite, the conditional, or the compound of the conditional of the verb *vouloir*, with *que* immediately after them, in the following case :—When they are followed by a pronoun, or a noun, which must be put in the nominative in French, though it is in the accusative in English, and the next verb must be put in the subjunctive.

He would have me get up at three o'clock.

Il vouloit que je me levasse à trois heures.

I will have him do it ; *je veux qu'il le fasse.*

She would have had me marry her ; *elle auroit voulu que je l'eusse épousée.*

He would have you behave better.

Il voudroit que vous vous conduisissiez mieux.

To be ;

Is rendered in the following different ways :

I. By the verb *devoir*, when it stands before an infinitive.

I was to go to London yesterday ; *je devois aller hier à Londres.*

We are to have a holiday to-morrow.

Nous devons avoir congé demain.

II. By the verb *se porter*, speaking of *health*. But if it is followed by an adjective, *être* must then be used, and not *se porter*.

How is your father ? *comment se porte votre père ?*

He is very well now, but he was very ill yesterday.

Il se porte bien à présent, mais il étoit très malade hier.

III. By the verb *avoir*, in the two following cases :

1. Speaking of age (except before adjectives).

2. Before nouns of measure, and the following words, *cold, hot, wrong, hungry, thirsty* ; these two last must be turned by their substantives.

How old is she ? *quel âge a-t-elle ?*

She is nine ; *elle a neuf ans.*

You are in the wrong ; *vous avez tort.*

I am

I am thirsty ; *j'ai soif.*

I was hungry ; *j'avois faim.*

She is very young ; *elle est fort jeune.*

IV. By the impersonal *il y a* coming before a word denoting a certain space of time, if the sentence can be turned by *there is*, or *was*.

I had been there already two days ; *i. e.* There were two days that I had been there ; *il y avoit déjà deux jours que j'y étois,*

You have been here an hour ; *i. e.* There is an hour that you are here ; *il y a une heure que vous êtes ici.*

. Some ;

Is rendered as follows :

I. When it is repeated before verbs in the same sentence, the first is made by *les uns, les unes* ; and the second by *les autres*.

Some went one way, some another.

Les uns allèrent d'un côté, & les autres d'un autre.

II. By *il y en a qui*, before verbs, if it can be turned by *there are some that*, or *who*.

Some think we shall have war ; *i. e.* There are some that think we shall have war ; *il y en a qui croient que nous aurons la guerre.*

Some were of a different opinion ; *il y en avoit qui étoient d'un sentiment différent.*

III. By *il y a* before nouns, if it can be turned by the impersonal *there are* ; the next noun must be put in the genitive ; but, if it is preceded by an adjective in French, we only put *de* before it, and no article before the noun.

Some friends are false ; *i. e.* There are false friends ; *il y a de faux amis.*

Some pains are salutary ; *il y a des peines salutaires.*

It is also often turned by *qui*, and the verb *être*, in the following manner.

Some Christians are unworthy of that name ; *i. e.* There are Christians that are unworthy of that name ; *il y a des chrétiens qui sont indignes de ce nom.*

IV. By

Some pains are wholesome (*i. e.* There are pains that are, &c.) ; *il y a des peines qui sont salutaires.*

IV. By *quelques*, before nouns plural without an article, denoting an indeterminate number, in the sense of *some ones, a few*, and not in the sense of *a piece, a bit*, or a part of the thing spoke of.

Some historians relate ; *quelques historiens rapportent.*

He had done me some services ; *il m'avoit rendu quelques services.*

V. By *quelques uns, quelques unes*, before genitives and datives, or at the end of a sentence, in the sense of *some of them, or a few*.—Lend me some of your pens ; *pretez moi quelques unes de vos plumes.*

She offered me some flowers, and I took some ; *i. e.* some ones, or a few ; *elle m'offrit des fleurs, & j'en pris quelques unes.*

Lend me some of your books ;

Pretez moi quelques uns de vos livres.

When it is not taken in the sense of *some ones, or a few*, it is rendered by the genitive of the next noun.

I had some flowers in my garden ; *j'avois des fleurs dans mon jardin.*—Some, is also rendered by *en*.

Whatever ;

Is rendered as follows :

I. By *quelque* when it comes before a verb, if the sentence can be turned by the word *let*. The verb must be put in the subjunctive.

Whatever he undertakes, he is sure of succeeding ; *i. e.* Let him undertake whatever he will, he is sure of succeeding ; *quoi qu'il entreprenne, il est sur de réussir.*

She is always merry, whatever happens to her ; *i. e.* let whatever happen to her ; *elle est toujours joyeuse quoi qu'il lui arrive.*

II. By *quelque* before a noun singular, or an adjective (not immediately followed by a substantive) with *que* immediately after the adjective ; the verb must be put in the subjunctive.

Whatever riches they have) ; *quelque riches qu'ils soient.*

III. By *quelques* before a noun plural, or an adjective followed by a noun plural with which it agrees ;

Q

that

that is then understood in English before the verb, but it must be expressed in French by *qui* or *que*.

Whatever events may happen; *i. e.* Whatever be the events that may happen; *quelques evenemens qui puissent arriver.*

Whatever great advantages you may expect from it.

Quelques grands avantages que vous puissiez en attendre.

IV. By *quel que*; fem. *quelle que*; plural, *quels que*, *quelles que*; with the verb *to be*, accompanied with a noun or pronoun nominative*, and not with an adjective. The verb must be put in the subjunctive; and the noun substantive must be placed after the verb, but not the pronoun personal.

Whatever your designs may be; *quels que soient vos desseins.*

Whatever she is; *quelle qu'elle soit.*

Whatever your sisters are; *quelles que soient vos sœurs.*

Whatever our fate may be; *quelle que puisse être notre destinée.*

V. By *tout ce qui*†, *tout ce que*, before or after verbs in the sense of *all that*, *any*, or *every thing that*‡.

She approves whatever he does; *elle approuve tout ce qu'il fait.*

He does whatever can please him; *il fait tout ce qui peut lui plaire.*

He knows whatever passes in your house.

Il sait tout ce qui se passe chez vous.

Any thing, whatever, is rendered by *quoi que se soit*, and *however*, in the sense of *whatever*, is rendered in the same manner.

Just;

To be just, *to have just*, coming before a participle passive, are rendered by the verb *venir de*; and the participle must be turned by the present of the infinitive.

He is just gone out; *il vient de sortir.*

I have just finished it; *je viens de le finir.*

* Sometimes the noun or pronoun in English comes between *whatever* and *to be*, but that makes no difference.

† When it comes immediately before the verb, and by *tout ce que*, if there is a noun between.

‡ That is, when it cannot admit *it*.

Sometimes

Sometimes it is rendered by *ne faire que de*.

He is just gone in ; *il ne fait que d'entrer*.

Though or *Tho'*, and *quite*, *as* ;

In the sense of *though*, are* rendered by *tout* before adjectives followed by *as* ; when the adjective is feminine, and begins with a consonant, *tout* is put in the feminine gender†, and agrees with the adjective. Sometimes *though* and *as* are understood in English, but they must be carefully expressed in French.

Bold as he is, he was frightened ; *tout hardi qu'il est, il eut peur*.—She is quite frightened ; *elle est tout éperdue* :

Ugly as she is, she will find a husband.

Toute laide qu'elle est, elle trouvera un mari.

These ladies were quite frightened ; *ces dames furent tout épouvantées*.

Ugly as they are ; *toutes laides qu'elles sont*.

Poor as they are, they will receive no charity ; *tout pauvres qu'ils sont, ils ne veulent recevoir aucune charité*.

This, these, ago ;

When the above words denote a space of time, they are rendered by the impersonal *il y a*, which must be placed at the head of the sentence ; then follows the adjective of number, and the noun with which it is connected, and then the verb with *que* before it.

I have not seen him these six weeks ; *i. e.* There are six weeks that I have not seen him ; *il y a six semaines que je ne l'ai vu*.

I was in France five years ago ; *j'étois en France il y a cinq ans*.

How long ago ? *combien y-a-t'il ?*

I have lived in London these ten years ; *i. e.* There are ten years that I live in London ; *il y a dix ans que je demeure à Londres*.

He has been dead this month ; *i. e.* There is a month that he is dead ; *il y a un mois qu'il est mort*.

He did the same thing twenty years ago ; *il y a vingt ans qu'il fit la même chose*, or *il fit la même chose il y a vingt ans*.

* But, if the adjective begins with a vowel, *tout* is then indeclinable.

† *Tout* must be placed before the adjective.

Note. The compound of the indicative must be rendered by the present in French, when the thing spoken of still continues.

He has been travelling these twenty years; (has been travelling these, &c. shews that he travels still); *il y a vingt ans qu'il voyage.*

He has been dead these forty years; *il y a quarante ans qu'il est mort.*

E X E R C I S E S.

He must have called this morning after we had gone out. What had he complained of? After enriching himself by his industry, he might have lived like a King in his own country, had he behaved as he should towards his relations, and assisted his friends as he might. Nothing could contribute more to the happiness of his people, than a law so salutary. Nothing could have arrived more seasonably at Rome than this news. They might have given battle to the enemy a month ago; though some say they could not have done it with any hopes of success. I could have done it, had you desired me in a more civil manner. Having posted his army as well as he could, he waited for the enemy.

What could I do in that case? I do not see in what I could have served him in that affair. He was to set out this morning at six o'clock. She is to have a new gown next week. I am better now than I was last week, but I am yet very weak. I was cold. I did not know that he could do it. Men and women retired in haste, some into the neighbouring cities, some into forests, where they perished with cold and hunger. Some love one thing, some another. Some pretend that these monuments are made with natural stones. Some Jews are honest. Some people are never satisfied with their condition. I gave him some books to read. I have some friends with me. If you have pens, pray lend me some. They were not commanded by their Prince, who was then very ill at Lisbon. It was the fashion twenty years ago.

I have just seen him go into that house. Lewis the Thirteenth and Cardinal Richlieu were just dead. As we have just seen it. He had just finished his exercise. I am just come from London. He has been in America these three years. I had been a month in Paris before I could speak one.

one word of French. How long has* he been dead? These five weeks. Have you been long in England? She has been waiting for you this hour. King, as he is, I should not like him for a husband.

Though he had but forty pounds a year, he never would accept the large sums his friends offered him, nor take any thing of the trade men that served his family, without paying ready money for it. He wanted his wife to believe it at first, that her lamentations and cries being real, might better serve his purpose. We have begot these children, said she, that there might be more supplicants to implore thy mercy. When he saw that his reasoning had no effect upon her, he applied to the mother, and represented to her the advantages that would accrue to her from that marriage; but neither he, nor she, could prevail upon the daughter to consent to it. I wrote to your brother a fortnight ago, but I have not received an answer yet. I wonder you could hesitate a moment. Her groans could not make any impression upon his mind. Are French ladies handsome? Some are. This wine is good; I have sent some to some of my friends, who say they never drank better. He looks very old, though he is but forty.

I had promised you, that I would do it as soon as I could. I had looked for him every where, and I could not find him. I would do it if I could. He used to play me all the tricks he could. They have taken whatever they could find. He had drunk as long as he could. He could have done it better if he would. I would have paid you ready money, had you made my coat as well as you could. They never could have succeeded without her assistance. I did not think she was so old. You might have spared yourself that trouble. You might have saved his life, had you come here sooner, as you might. I will make trial of it, whatever it may cost. Whatever glory he might have acquired. Whatever experience you may have acquired in affairs, always take the advice of wise people, before you undertake any thing. Whatever are the services he had done to his country.

Whatever advantages nature gives, it is not she alone, but fortune with her that makes heroes. Whatever friendship he has for her, she must not expect that he will grant whatever she asks. Whatever faults he has committed, they

* *How long*, followed by the verb *to have*, is rendered by *combien il y a que*.

will forgive him. Whatever his reasons are, and whatever his motives may be, I do not approve of his behaviour. Are you sure he might have come, if we could have sent for him? What would you have him do? He had been dead two years, when I returned from Asia. What will you have for dinner? Whatever you will. Those rules are founded upon sure principles which will have you say with different particles, China stuffs; to go to England; to arrive in Spain. I was at the other end of the bridge.

One could make a comical application of the following story. Othos and Ephialtes, the sons of Aloeus, and Hippimede, the daughter of Neptune, were of a wonderful bigness: it is said, that they grew nine inches every month; when they were nine years old, they endeavoured to climb up to heaven. Some people take a delight in setting the most intimate friends at variance. He was ill for three days, for drinking cold water when he was hot. Whatever patience one may have, it is difficult to suffer a long time without complaining. Whatever siege the King would undertake, on whatever side he would turn his arms, succours of all kinds were always ready by the vigilance of his ministers. The Emperor granted whatever he asked.

C H A P. XVIII.

The right using of the IMPERFECT and PRETERITE of the INDICATIVE.

RULE I.

The Imperfect, and not the Preterite, must be used in the following cases:

I. Whenever it is, or can be englished by the participle active, with *was* or *were* before it.

A wolf was drinking at the head of a fountain.

Un loup buvoit à la source d'une fontaine.

As the fox despaired of coming out of the well (was despairing); *comme le renard desespéroit de sortir du puits.*

II. When it does not denote the precise time when the action began; that is, when it denotes an indeterminate time; and when it is not subsequent to a foregoing action. Action means here the thing spoke of.

Mithridates spoke thirty-two languages.

Mithridates parloit trente deux langues.

I was

I was in London when George the Third was crowned ; *j'étois à Londres quand George trois fut couronné.*

We were at dinner when he arrived ; *nous étions à table quand il arriva.*

I have lost my watch this morning ; for I know I had it last night ; *j'ai perdu ma montre ce matin ; car je sais que je l'avois hier au soir.*

Spoke thirty-two, &c. denotes an indeterminate time ; *i. e.* it does not denote when he began to speak thirty-two languages.

I was in London, &c. does not denote when I arrived there.

I had it last night ; does not denote that I had my watch last night for the first time ; on the contrary, it intimates that I had it before.

III. When it denotes the continuation, or the repetition of the same action, provided the time is undetermined, and the action is not subsequent to another action ; for if it is, the preterite must then be used.

When I lived in the country, I went a hunting twice a week ; *quand je demeurois à la campagne, j'allois à la chasse deux fois par semaine.*

Hannibal seeing that Fabius wanted to draw the war into length, offered him battle several times, but in vain ; *Hannibal voyant que Fabius avoit envie de tirer la guerre en longueur, lui presenta plusieurs fois bataille, mais en vain.*

Offered him, is subsequent to Hannibal seeing, &c. therefore cannot be made by the imperfect, though the action was repeated.

RULE II.

The preterite, and not the imperfect, must be used in the following cases :

I. When it denotes the beginning of the action, or when the action began.

Alexander, with forty thousand men, attacked Darius, who had six hundred thousand.

Alexandre avec quarante mille hommes attaqua Darius, qui en avoit six cent mille.

Attacked

Attacked Darius, denotes the beginning of the action. *Had six hundred, &c.* does not denote the beginning of the action of having six hundred thousand men, since Darius had them before the battle.

After Cæsar's death the sole authority of the government was in the hands of Antonius, who was then consul; *après la mort de César toute l'autorité du gouvernement fut entre les mains d'Antoine qui étoit alors consul.*

Was in the hands, shews the action begins there; for Anthony had not the sole authority before.

Was consul, does not shew that he began to be consul then, but only that he was so at that time, and had been appointed to that office before, without specifying when.

II. When it is subsequent to another action.

After I had received my money, I went away.

Après que j'eus reçu mon argent je m'en allai.

Went away, is subsequent to *received my money*.

Turenne having learned that the city had but a weak garrison, resolved to take it by surprize.

Turenne ayant appris que la ville n'avoit qu'une foible garnison, résolut de la prendre par surprize.

Resolved to take, is subsequent to *having learned*; for he resolved to take it in consequence of having heard the garrison was weak.

I was very much surprized when you told me he was dead; *je fus bien surpris quand vous me dites qu'il étoit mort.*

I was, is here subsequent to *you told me*; for you told me first; then I was surprised.

Note. I. The imperfect and the preterite must be both rendered by the preterite of the subjunctive after words governing that mood.

II. The preterite is never used when the thing spoken of happened in the day, week, month, year, age, wherein we live; but the imperfect may. The preterite must then be made by the compound of the indicative.

The woman I saw this morning is the person we were speaking of to-day at dinner; *la femme que j'ai vue ce matin, est la personne dont nous parlions aujourd'hui à dîner.*

You

You was very thoughtful this morning.

Vous étiez fort pensif ce matin.

I met the King this week going to Richmond.

J'ai rencontré le Roi cette semaine qui alloit à Richmond.

III. When the imperfect and preterite can be turned by the compound of the indicative in English without altering the sense, they must be rendered by the same tense in French.

Where is your watch ? *où est votre montre ?* — I lost it ;
i. e. I have lost it ; *je l'ai perdue.*

Did you see my father in London (have you seen) ;
avez vous vu mon pere à Londres.

The man I saw is taller than he (I have seen) ;
l'homme que j'ai vu est plus grand que lui.

Did you mention it to me ? *m'en avez vous fait mention.*

Did he ever see any thing like it (has he ever seen) ?
a-t'il jamais rien vu de pareil.

E X E R C I S E S.

I went to my uncle's yesterday. Did you meet any body there that I know ? Yes, Mr. and Mrs. Boscawen were there. What did they say to you ? They told me no news. Did you speak French to them ? Yes, all our conversation was in French. Did they say you speak it well ? They asked me whom I learned from ; I told them I learned of you. How was your uncle ? He was very well then. After Cæsar had conquered Britain, he built a tower in London, and returned to Italy. When the fox saw that he gave himself trouble for nothing, he went away, saying, the grapes were not yet ripe, and he would not eat them if they were given him. An ass was grazing in a field ; a lion came to attack him ; a cock crowed, upon which the lion ran away. The ass thinking the lion was afraid of him, began to pursue him. A hound who had always satisfied his master extremely well, became infirm by age and fatigue. One day that he pursued a wild boar, he took him by the ear ; but, as his teeth were very bad, he was obliged to let him go. The members one day mutinied against the belly ; they did not understand what right he had to be the only one who had nothing to do, whilst they took so much pains to procure the means of subsistence. The spirit of party reigned

reigned at that time. Priam, King of Troy, had a son called Paris, who went into Greece, and carried off Helena, the greatest beauty of her age. She was the wife of Menelaus, King of Sparta, a city in Greece. The Greeks, incensed at this affront, united their forces, and marched against Troy, under the command of Agamemnon, King of Mycenæ, and Menelaus's brother. After a siege of ten years, that unfortunate city was taken and destroyed, about one thousand one hundred and eighty-four years before Christ. Æneas, Priam's son-in-law, having had the good fortune to escape from the destruction of Troy, embarked with a small number of followers, and arrived in Italy, where he married Lavinia, the only daughter of Latinus, King of Latium, and inherited the crown after the death of his father-in-law. He afterwards built Lavinium, in honour of his wife, and removed thither the seat of the empire. After having reigned about four years, he was slain by the Etrurians, with whom he was at war. His son Ascanius, whom he had had by Creusa, his first wife, succeeded him. This young prince, some years after, left Lavinium to his mother-in-law, and founded Alba Longa, where he established his residence. After a succession of eleven Princes, the kingdom devolved to Procas, who left two sons, Numitor and Amulius. Amulius drove Numitor from the throne, and secured it to himself. He obliged Rhea Sylvia, the only daughter of Numitor, to take the habit of a vestal virgin, to prevent the elder family from having any offspring, that might one day claim the crown, which he had usurped. But this precaution had not the effect he expected from it; for Rhea Sylvia proved with child not long after, and was brought to bed of twins, Romulus and Remus, who were exposed by the King's command; but the man who had orders to execute this inhuman commission, left them in a basket at the foot of a tree, on the banks of the river Tiber. In this sad condition they were discovered by Faustulus, the King's shepherd, who carried them to Laurentia, his wife, and bid her nurse them as her own children. Remus and Romulus being grown up, killed Amulius, and restored Numitor, their grandfather, to the throne. Two years after the re-establishment of Numitor, Remus and Romulus left Alba, and taking with them as many people as they could get, built Rome on the twenty-first of April, in the place where they had been brought up,

seven

seven hundred and fifty-three years before Christ, and four hundred and thirty-four after the taking of Troy.

These two brothers fell out at the beginning of their work. Romulus killed Remus, and was declared King by his followers. The first care of this prince was to establish laws with regard to religion and civil government. Afterwards, desiring to people his new city, he opened a public asylum near the town. It was a sanctuary, where criminals of all kinds found a safe refuge. It was soon filled; for murderers, poisoners, bankrupts, highwaymen, fugitives, slaves, and all kinds of adventurers, repaired thither from all parts. Romulus intermixed these new-comers with his subjects, and they together occupied the celebrated city, Rome, which at first was inhabited by that set of robbers, of whom Romulus was the chief. From that gang of robbers, sprung the conquerors of the world. Romulus, having numbered all the citizens of Rome, found that his forces consisted of three thousand foot, and about three hundred horsemen. He divided them into three tribes, and assigned to each of them a part of the city to inhabit. He afterwards divided his subjects into three orders: the patricians, the knights, and the plebeians. He chose an hundred patricians to assist him in the administration of the affairs of government. This body was called the senate. To prevent the divisions, which jealousy might occasion between citizens of the same republic, some of whom had been raised to dignities, and some had remained in the order of the people, he put the plebeians under the protection of the patricians, who had been elected senators. The moderation of the government of Rome drew thither a great number of new citizens, all of whom Romulus made soldiers. This republic began already to render itself formidable to its neighbours. The Romans wanted only women to secure the duration of it. Romulus sent deputies to the neighbouring nations, to ask their daughters in marriage. But these people, jealous of the greatness of Rome, rejected the proposal with scorn; some added raillery to the denial. They asked these deputies, why their prince did not open an asylum for fugitive women, and the slaves of that sex, as he had done for men: that would be the way, said they, to make matches, in which neither party would have any thing with which to reproach the other. Romulus, touched to the quick at an answer so satirical, resolved to carry off their daughters. He communicated his design to
the

the senate, and as the greatest part of them had been brought up in the principle of taking every thing by force, they highly applauded a project which was so unjust, but so suitable to their audacity. To put this design in execution, they gave out that they would celebrate games on such a day in honour of Neptune. Almost all the neighbouring nations came to Rome with their wives and daughters, to see the celebration of these games. The Romans received them all with great demonstrations of joy, and after having entertained them extremely well, they conducted them to the place where the games were to be celebrated. But whilst the strangers were attentive in looking at the shew, the Romans, sword in hand, rushed into the assembly, carried off all the virgins, and turned out of Rome the fathers and mothers, who complained in vain, that the rights of nations, and of hospitality, were violated. These poor girls were at first very much grieved; but on seeing they were going to be married, they were soon comforted; and matrimony softened the aversion they had at first for their ravishers.

The rape of these virgins occasioned a bloody war, which lasted many years with the neighbouring nations. Romulus conquered all his enemies, except Tatius, King of the Sabines, whom he was obliged to associate with him in the supreme power, and an hundred of the most eminent men of that nation were admitted into the senate.

Tatius being killed six years after, Romulus reigned alone; he made war against the Camerini, the Fidenates, and the Vientes. He overcame them all, one after another: he took their towns, and seized a part of their territories. After these successes, this prince began to grow so arbitrary, that he drew upon him the hatred of the senate. Romulus, in the fifty-fifth year of his age, and in the thirty-seventh of his reign, disappeared suddenly, nobody knew how. It was said publicly, that the senators had murdered him in the middle of the senate, and that each of them carried off a piece of his body under their robes.

Some days after his death, Jun. Proculus swore solemnly, that Romulus had appeared to him the night before, and had declared that he would be worshipped under the name of Quirinus. Upon this declaration, the senate ordered altars to be erected in his honour, and made a god of a man, whom they could not bear for their sovereign.

At

At the end of the year of Romē five hundred and thirty-five, the war broke out again between the Romans and Carthaginians. According to some authors, the cause of this rupture was the ambition of the Carthaginians, and their desire of freeing themselves from the tribute they were obliged to pay to the Romans by the last treaty of peace. It is amazing that treaties, made to preserve peace between neighbouring nations, are almost always the occasion, or the pretence of war. The Romans charged the Carthaginians with being the aggressors. The Carthaginians, without doubt, complained also of the Romans. The wrong is seldom all on one side; both parties always charge one another with having violated the treaty of peace; and as the true causes of war are seldom known, but by the princes and their ministers, it is not an easy matter to know which is in the right.

Hannibal, at that time, commanded the Carthaginians in Spain. His father, Amilcar, had obliged him, when he was nine years old, to take an oath on the altar, that he never would be a friend to the Romans, and that he would revenge his country, as soon as he should be able to draw a sword. He observed religiously what he had sworn in so solemn a manner; for never man did so much mischief to the Romans as he did. But, before we proceed any further, it is proper to inform the reader, of the great qualities of this mortal enemy of the Romans.

Hannibal, being nine years old, was brought into Spain to learn the art of war, under his father Amilcar, who then commanded the Carthaginians. His great talents for war, and the continual practice of military affairs, made him a great commander. He was sober, and hated all pleasures that enervate the mind; he slept very often on the ground, only wrapt up in a soldier's coat. He never went to bed but when he had nothing to do. He could endure the greatest hardships.

A wonderful genius to put his designs in execution; fruitful in expedients, and as ingenious to get out of danger as to bring his enemies into it. He had a wonderful presence of mind, even in the heat of action, to take advantage of the smallest faults of his enemies. In a word, he had all the qualifications that make a great general. Such was Hannibal, when he was appointed general in chief of the Carthaginian armies in Spain. He soon gave

proof of his abilities in the art of war. After having subdued all Spain in the space of three years, he besieged Saguntum, a city in alliance with the Romans.

After the taking of Saguntum, the Romans having declared war against the Carthaginians, Hannibal, though he was then but twenty-seven years old, formed the boldest enterprize that any commander had ever dared to conceive, but which the event justified.

From the extremity of Spain, he resolved to carry the war immediately into Italy, and to attack the Romans in the heart of their dominions, without having there either place, or magazine, or trusty friends, or hope of a retreat, in case he should be defeated. All these considerations did not deter Hannibal from his design; he crossed the Pyrenæan mountains at the head of a strong army, and, after having routed all the nations that opposed his passage, he crossed the Rhone, and encamped, in the beginning of the winter, at the foot of the Alps, over which he resolved to force his way into Italy. The sight of the Alps, the tops of which are always covered with snow, and seem to rise above the clouds, struck a terror into the minds of these poor Africans, who had never seen snow before. They beheld with dread the height of these lofty mountains, where reigns an eternal winter. Nothing was seen but snow, ice, frightful precipices, and steep rocks, over which they were to pass.

Every body expected to perish in this passage, and thought himself already lost. Terror and consternation were general, when they received orders to begin their march. Officers and soldiers thought they were going to a certain death. But Hannibal removed their fears by his courage, and animated them by his example. He eat the same bread as the soldiers did, and shared all kinds of dangers and hardships with them.

No army had ever crossed the Alps before; the way had always been thought impracticable. Cornelius Nepos says, that a single man, without arms, could hardly climb up these mountains. The difficulty of carrying the baggage would have deterred any other general from such an enterprize; but the hatred that Hannibal bore the Romans, prevailed over all other considerations, and his resolution once taken, nothing could divert him from it. He overcame all the obstacles he met with in his way, and after a march of
 nine

nine days, and incredible hardships, he reached the top of the Alps.

He rested there two days to refresh his army. From thence he shewed to his soldiers, quite worn out with fatigue, the fruitful countries of Italy. You have, said he to them, but one effort more to make; one battle or two will put a glorious period to your toils, and enrich you for ever. Take courage, my friends, and Italy shall in a short time be the reward of your valour.

Having animated his soldiers by this speech, he ordered the march to begin again. The way grew more and more difficult as they came down the mountain. The ice that covered the way all over, rendered it so very slippery, that they could hardly stand. Hannibal melted the ice with fires which he ordered to be made. At last, after fifteen days march, he arrived in Italy to the great surprize of the Romans, who had always thought the Alps impassable.

Upon his coming into Italy he carried all before him, though he had lost a third part of his army in the passage of the Alps. He cut to pieces two Roman armies; the one at Pavia, the other near Trebia. The following year he routed the consul Flaminius, near the Lake Thrasymene. The Romans lost twenty thousand men in that battle. The consul was among the slain. It is said, that both armies fought with such fury, that they did not perceive an earthquake, which that very day overthrew several towns near the field of battle.

After these three great victories, Hannibal laid waste all the country. The Romans were in the utmost consternation. Fabius Maximus was appointed dictator. This general, in some measure, retrieved affairs, by avoiding to come to an engagement with Hannibal. He contented himself with carrying off the provisions of the enemy, watching their motions, and keeping them in a perpetual alarm. Hannibal, who did not like that way of making war, offered him battle several times, but Fabius took always great care to avoid it.

After many marches and countermarches, Hannibal intending to go to Cassinum, was through a mistake led to Casilinum in Campania. Fabius having had notice of his march, detached four thousand men to seize a defile through which Hannibal was obliged to pass, and with the remainder of the army he posted himself on the adjacent hills. His

orders were so well executed, that the Carthaginians were surrounded on every side. Fabius thought then, that he should soon put an end to the war by taking Hannibal, and his whole army. He sent word to Rome, that he had at last caught Hannibal in a trap which he had laid for him, and that he should send him to Rome in a few days. But before the express had arrived at Rome, Hannibal got out of the defile, by a singular stratagem. He got together two thousand oxen, and having tied bundles of vine branches to their horns, he ordered them to be driven in the night over the hills where the Romans were posted, and then caused the bundles to be set on fire.

When these animals felt the fire, they put themselves into such a rage, that running up and down, they set on fire all the bushes and shrubs, and made a dreadful noise. The Romans were so frightened at this sight, that they quitted their posts in a hurry, and left the passage free. They thought these oxen were so many devils, who had come to get the Carthaginians off. Fabius, fearing to fall into an ambuscade, did not dare to stir from his camp. Hannibal did not lose so fine an opportunity. He took his measures so well, that he passed the defile without losing a single man. At day-break Fabius was very much surprised to see that his troops had been routed by a detachment of oxen, and was yet more so, when he heard that Hannibal had escaped by that stratagem.

Some time after Hannibal attacked the Roman army near Cannæ. This battle is one of the most memorable we have any account of in the Roman History. Their whole army, consisting of near eighty thousand men, was entirely destroyed. Above fifty thousand were left upon the field of battle, ten thousand were taken prisoners, and the rest were dispersed all over Italy. Hannibal sent to Carthage two bushels of gold rings, taken off the fingers of the Roman knights who were slain in this battle: a number almost incredible.

It is thought, that, if Hannibal, after this great victory, had marched strait to Rome, he would have made himself master of it without much trouble. It was the opinion of Mahербal, his general of horse: "Let me go before, said he to him, with the horse, to invest Rome, and in a few days we shall sup in the Capitol." Mahербal, perceiving that Hannibal did not think proper to follow his advice,
cried

cried out, " now I see that the gods have not granted to the same man, to know how to conquer, and how to make a good use of the victory."

Hannibal, instead of improving his victory, remained in Campania, as if he had been afraid to put an end to the war too soon. He took Capua, which was afterwards as fatal to him as Cannæ had been to the Romans. The inhabitants of Rome not seeing Hannibal at their gates, as they expected, began to recover from their consternation. They enlisted all the young men fit to bear arms; the slaves were set at liberty; and the prisoners released, on condition that they should serve in the army.

Whilst these things were transacting at Rome, Hannibal was at Capua, the most depraved place in the world. There he spent the winter. All the historians relate, that the voluptuous and effeminate pleasures of that city entirely enervated the courage of the Carthaginians. These Africans who had come into Italy through ice and snow, and had defeated four Roman armies, were overcome by the pleasures of Capua. It is certain, that, from that time, fortune was no more favourable to them; they were defeated in Spain, in Sicily, and Sardinia.

The Romans, though hardly able to make head against Hannibal in Italy, resolved to attack the Carthaginians in Sicily, and in Spain. Syracuse, a city in Sicily, having declared for the Carthaginians, the consul Marcellus invested by sea and by land, and took it after a siege of three years, in spite of all the wonderful engines which Archimedes, the greatest mathematician of his age, contrived to defend it. It is said, that this great mechanic had his attention so deeply fixed on some problems, when the Romans stormed the town, that he did not perceive the noise there was in the place. A Roman soldier entered his room, and seeing some mathematical figures which he had described upon some dust, asked him what he was about. But Archimedes was so absorbed in thought, that he gave him no answer, not perceiving there was any body in his room. The soldier, affronted at his silence, ran him through with his sword.

The Romans, encouraged by their success in Sicily, besieged Capua, in Italy. Hannibal, to oblige them to raise the siege, marched straight to Rome, and advanced to the very gates of the city with his cavalry. But a dreadful storm

arising as he was going to make an attack, he was obliged to retire with precipitation. Capua was taken by Fulvius, who ordered fifty-six senators to be hanged, and deprived the city of its privileges.

The fortune of war is very uncertain. The Romans, having had some success in Sicily and Italy, were totally defeated in Spain. The two brothers, the Scipios, who commanded them, were both slain. L. Martius, a Roman knight, and a very able commander, got together the broken remains of the Roman army, and gained some advantages over the Carthaginians. Yet nobody at Rome durst to take upon him the management of the war in a country, where the enemies were still so superior. The young Scipio, though he was hardly four and twenty years old, offered himself voluntarily, thinking it belonged to him alone to avenge the death of his father and of his uncle. The people, admiring his courage, sent him to Spain, with the title of Proconsul.

Upon his coming into Spain, he carried all before him. He took new Carthage, and beat the enemy in several encounters; and, five years after his arrival, there was not a single Carthaginian in Spain. Among the prisoners Scipio had taken, there was a Princess of exquisite beauty. By general consent she was allotted to him as part of the booty to which he was entitled by right of war. But Scipio hearing, that this lady was betrothed to Allucius, a Celtiberian Prince, refused to see her, and ordered her to be delivered to her lawful bridegroom, together with the money her relations had brought for her ransom. This generous action of Scipio won him the hearts of all the people of Spain; and they came in crowds to submit to him. It was reported all over the country, that a god had descended from heaven to command the Roman army, under the shape of a man called Scipio.

After the conquest of Spain, Scipio crossed over to Africa, in order to force Hannibal to leave Italy. But, as this enterprise seemed rash, the senate would not at first supply him either with money or troops. But his reputation, his valour, and especially his affability, procured him soldiers. He soon found himself at the head of a strong army, with which he defeated the Carthaginians in three battles, and obliged them at last to recall Hannibal from Italy to defend Carthage.

No exile ever discovered so much sorrow in leaving his native country, as Hannibal did when he saw himself obliged to quit Italy. He accused both gods and men of being the cause of his misfortunes; he cursed a thousand times the senate of Carthage, who had left him in want of every thing. He also blamed himself for not having made a good use of the advantages he had gained over the Romans. But all his complaints were to no purpose; he was obliged to depart.

Never did the inhabitants of Rome discover so much joy, as they did when they heard of the departure of this mortal enemy; who, at nine years of age, had sworn on the altar an eternal enmity against them, and who after having made war against them during sixteen years in the heart of their dominions, did not think himself absolved from the oath he had made to his father, as long as a single Roman remained alive. It seemed, that his hatred against the Romans could not be satisfied, but by the destruction of Rome, and the total extinction of its inhabitants.

Hannibal being arrived in Africa, had an interview with Scipio, but as they could not agree, they prepared for action. The battle was fought near Zama. Both Generals displayed on this occasion all their abilities. The victory was to crown the conqueror with glory, and to decide whether Rome or Carthage should prescribe laws to all other nations. The signal for battle being given, both armies engaged with an incredible fury. Hannibal was every where; he fought on foot and on horseback, sometimes at the head of the cavalry, at other times at that of the infantry; he ran from rank to rank through the greatest dangers, encouraging his soldiers: he rallied the run-aways, supported those that gave ground, and brought back to the charge the battalions that had been repulsed. Nevertheless, in spite of all his efforts, victory declared in favour of the Romans, after a most sharp and obstinate engagement. Hannibal, seeing that he could not prevent the defeat of his army, made his escape during the tumult, after having done all that could be expected from a good general.

Hannibal, after his defeat, retired to Adrumetum, where he was making new preparations to carry on the war with vigour, when the Carthaginians sued for peace, and obtained it, but on very hard terms, and very little different from slavery. Hannibal was then recalled, and Scipio returned to Rome through

through crowds of people, whom the curiosity of seeing the conqueror of Hannibal had brought together. The senate decreed him the most magnificent triumph that had ever been seen, and the surname of Africanus was given him, as the greatest honour that could be conferred upon him.

Such was the end of the second Punick war, one of the most memorable that is recorded in history; whether we consider the boldness of the enterprises, the wisdom discovered in the execution, the abilities of the commanders, the obstinate efforts of two rival nations, the variety of uncommon events, but, above all, the wonderful constancy of the Romans after the greatest overthrows.

C H A P. XIX.

The following verbs require **DE** before the next infinitive.

Such as are marked thus * govern the genitive, and those marked † the dative.

*Achever, affecter, apprehender, arreter, attendre, aver-
tir. Blamer*. Chagriner, craindre, charger, choisir,
conjur, censurer, cesser, conseiller†, convaincre, conclure,
contraindre, convenir, commander†. Desoler, deffendre†
(forbid), decourager, dispenser*, degouter*, dissuader*,
differer, dire, demander†. Empêcher, enjoindre, e-
crire, exempter, excuser, enrager*, esperer, entre-
prendre, essayer. Feindre, finir, fournir. Gronder.
jurer, inspirer†, justifier, jouir*, juger à propos. Louer.
Medit, meriter, menacer, mander†, mourir.† Notifier†,
negliger. Ordonn†, omettre, offrir†, oublier. - Permet-
tre†, promettre†, profiter*, presser, prier, pardonner,
presumer, persuader†, plaindre, proposer, plaire†, parler.†
Reprendre, refuser, reprimander, resoudre, remercier, re-
procher, recommander. Sommer, soupçonner*, scandaliser,
supplier, suffire, suggerer†, tacher, surprendre, etre
obligé, il est, c'est (it is), il appartient†, il convient†, il
fied bien* (Imperf.), desirer.*

The following verbs require **DE** before the next infinitive, and govern the genitive of nouns.

*S'abstenir, s'avis, s'apperecevoir, s'approcher, s'aquit-
ter s'accomoder, s'affuger, se chagriner, se charger, se
consoler,*

consoler, se demettre, se depecher, se desier, se desister, s'empêcher, s'empresser, s'ennuyer, s'enorgueillir, s'étonner, s'emanciper, s'emparer, se hater, se laisser, s'impatienter, être surpris, se flatter, s'indigner, se rebuter, enrager, se plaindre, se desister, se retracter, se piquer, se scandaliser, se depecher, s'efforcer, se garder, se mêler, se moquer, se rejouir, se repentir, se ressouvenir, se soucier, se vanter, s'affliger, se retenir, se hater, s'enquêter, être consterné, se saisir, s'ennuyer, se scandaliser.

The following verbs require à before the next infinitive

Such as are marked thus † govern the Dative.

Aimer, avoir, admettre, apprendre, appret†, assigner, aboutir†, autoriser, applaudir, aider†, aspirer†. Commencer, consister, contribuer†, condamner, continuer. Demander†, dresser, disposer, destiner, donner, gagner. Enhardir, être, enseigner, éclairer, employer, encourager, engager, exciter, exercer. Inviter. Nuire†. Montrer. Obeir†. Perdre, porter, pousser, pardonner, parvenir†, pourvoir†, procéder†, prétendre, penser, persister. Résister, réussir†. Tendre, travailler†, tarder (to stay), se mettre, s'attacher†, s'appliquer†, s'accoutumer†, songer† s'arrêter, s'amuser†, se déterminer, se disposer, s'endurcir†, s'engager†, s'exposer†, se livrer†, s'occuper†, s'opposer†, s'obstiner†, s'opiniâtrer†, dépenser, chercher.

The following conjunctions govern the indicative.

Ainsi que, à ce que, à cause que, aussitôt que, après que, attendu que, au lieu que, à mesure que, autant que, à peine, sitôt que, tant que, aussi long tems que. Comme. De même que, de manière que, de façon que, des que, d'où vient que, de sorte que, de puis que, si, tandis que, suivant que. Entant que. Lors que. Outre que. Pendant que, parce que, puis que, peut être que. Quand. Si bien que, Tellement que. Vu que.

The following conjunctions govern the subjunctive.

Afin que, avant que, au cas que, à moins que, à condition que, à la bonne heure que. Bien que. Ce n'est pas que, il s'en faut bien que. De peur que, de crainte que.

En

En cas que, encore que, excepté que. Hormis que, hors que. Moyennant que, malgré que. Non que, non pas que, loin que, non obstant que. Pour que, pourvu que, pour peu que. Quoi que. Sans que, soit que, supposé que, si ce n'est que, si non que. Tant s'en faut que.

The following prepositions govern the genitive.

Après, autour, à coté, à l'égard, à couvert, à l'abri, à raison, à la réserve, à l'insçu, au deçà, au delà, au dessus, au dessous, au devant, au dehors, au dedans, au travers, au milieu, à cause, en presense, le long, vis à vis, pres, proche.

The following govern the dative.

Jus qu'à, quant à, paraport.

The following verbs will have no preposition before the next infinitive.

Aimer, mieux, aller, assurer, affirmer, avouer, appercevoir. Confesser, croire, conter (to expect), considérer. Declarer, dire, déposer, daigner, devoir, envoyer, espérer, désirer. Ecouter, entendre, épier. Faire. Nier. Laisser. Ouir, oser. Publier, paroître, penser, prétendre, pouvoir. Reconnoître. Soutenir, sembler, s'imaginer, savoir, souhaitter. Voir, valoir mieux, vouloir, il faut, il falloit, &c.

The following substantives require DE before the next infinitive.

Occasion, affaire, ambition, art, avantage, attention, audace, avis, ardeur, amitié, avidité, amour, attente, arrogance, artifice, adresse, action, autorité, assurance. Besoin, bonté, bonheur. Congé, coutume, choix, cœur, courage, commodité, contrainte, confusion, constance, chagrin. Dessein, désespoir, depit, désir, danger, déplaisir, dureté. Envie, effronterie, espoir, esperance, esprit, embarras. Facilité, faveur, front, fermeté, force, fierté, façon. Grace, gloire, fureur. Hardiesse, hazard, habitude, honte, déshonneur, honnêteté, droit. Impudence, imprudence,

imprudence, habileté, insolence, incommodité, impuissance, intention, justice, inquiétude, lieu, liberté. Motif, moyen, malice, malheur, mal-adresse, mortification, maître, manière. Nature, nécessité, orgueil, obligation, ordre. Passion, plaisir, pouvoir, puissance, presumption, peine. Ruse, risque, raison. Sujet, soin, sagesse, satisfaction, sens, scandale, souci. Tort, temerité. Volonté, mal, permission, occasion.

The following nouns require no article after the following verbs.

Avoir.

Accès, affaire, appétit, attention. Besoin. Chaud, compassion, confiance, connoissance, carte blanche, cours, coutume, avis. Envie, esperance, egard. Faim, froid. Honte, honneur. Justice. Lieu. Ordre, occasion, obligation. Pitié, part, patience, permission, plein pouvoir, querelle, peur. Raison, rapport. Soif, sujet, soin. Tort.

Donner.

Avis, atteinte, audience. Caution, carrière, conseil, congé, courage, charge, cours. Envie, exemple. Permission, parole pouvoir, carte blanche, ordre, leçon, prise. Quartier, quittance. Rendez-Vous, lieu, sujet, raison, occasion.

Faire.

Abjuration, alliance, alte, amitié, attention. Cas, compte, affront, banqueroute, mauvaise ou bonne mine, brèche, bonne chere, choix, difficulté, conscience, compassion. Eclat, confidence, envie, emplette, epreuve, excuse. Feu, fête, feinte, fond, fortune, front. Grace, gloire. Honneur, deshonneur. Insulte, impression, justice, jour. Marché, main basse. Parade, naufrage, part, gageure, pitié, peine, plaisir, peur, penitence, present, place, provision. Quartier. Reflexion, reparation. Satisfaction, semblant, scrupule, sentinelle, serment, signe. Tapage, tort, trafic, commerce, usage, tete.

Prendre.

Avis. Courage, conseil, congé, connoissance, cours. Exemple, garde. Feu, fin. Gout. Haleine. Naïssance.

ance. Medicine. Pitié, intérêt, plaisir, place, patience, possession, pié, peine, pretexte, parti. Soin, seance, terre.

Chercher, demander.

Entendre, mettre, lier, parler, porter.

Pardre, preter, rendre, tenir, courir, obtenir, lieu, parole, tete, (table ouverte,) boutique, caffè.

Cabaret, serment, justice, service, témoignage, visite, querelle, risque, audience, avis, caution, conseil, compte, quartier, justice, raison, malice, raison, finesse, raillerie, fin, pie à terre, amitié, raison, français, latin, anglais, courage, patience, bonheur, malheur, guignon, coup, prejudice, envie, serment, grace.



F I N I S.

21

683. i. 17.

K with Stein